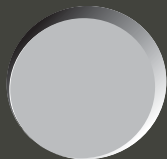
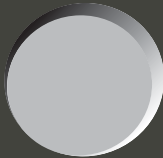
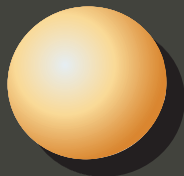
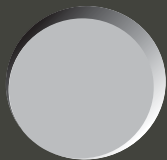


# SIMPURE N

## FOMA® N600i Manual



MODE







- Contents/ Safety Precautions
- Getting Started
- Making/Receiving Phone Calls
- Making/Receiving Videophone Calls
- Using the Phonebook
- Settings
- Security Settings
- Camera
- i-mode
- Mail
- i-appli
- Data Box
- Other Useful Functions
- Network Services
- Data Communication
- Entering Text
- Overseas Use
- Appendix
- Index/Quick Manual

# For Users of SIMPURE N

## ■ Notifications to users

- Please find the following modifications to "SIMPURE N FOMA N600i Manual".
- The latest information about the manual is on DoCoMo website.

- User's Manual Download  
 (<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/download/index.html>)  
 \* The URL and contents may change without any notice in the future.

Where to find (Page/item)	Current descriptions	Modified descriptions
<u>Page 20</u> How to View the Display (Right column at the bottom)	 The ring tone volume level set to "silent"	 The ring tone volume level for Incoming call and mail set to the lowest level
<u>Page 21</u> How to View the Display (NOTE)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can check for missed calls and new mails by pressing  with the FOMA terminal folded.</li> <li>· If you have missed calls or new mails, the incoming call lamp flashes in blue.</li> <li style="text-align: center;">:</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● You can check for missed calls and new mails by pressing  with the FOMA terminal folded.</li> <li>· If you have missed calls or new mails, the incoming call lamp lights in blue.</li> <li style="text-align: center;">:</li> </ul> (Changed the incoming call lamp state to "lights in blue")
<u>Page 31</u> Receiving a Call (NOTE)	— (No descriptions)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If your FOMA card in use has no call waiting subscription, you cannot hold a call.</li> </ul>
<u>Page 51</u> Setting Talk Functions (Step 2)	<b>Automatic redial</b> Sets whether to redial a number automatically when a call was not answered,	<b>Automatic redial</b> Sets whether to redial a number automatically when a call was not answered (or the called party is on another call.),
<u>Page 111</u> Using Schedule Function (NOTE)	— (No descriptions)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The alarm tone volume level for schedule/Alarm clock is as specified in the "Incoming/Volume" settings.</li> <li>● When the alarm setting time is reached with the following screens displayed, a "pipip" tone sounds instead of the set alarm tone:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· "Schedule" screen</li> <li>· "Schedule" edit screen</li> <li>· "Alarm clock" list screen</li> <li>· "Alarm clock" edit screen</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<u>Page 121</u> Adding a new service (Step 6)	6 "YES"	(The descriptions on the left column deleted)

(Continued on the next page)


Where to find (Page/item)	Current descriptions	Modified descriptions
<u>Page 122</u> Adding response message (Step 4)	4 Enter a command → Enter a response message → "YES"	4 Enter a command → Enter a response message ("YES" is deleted)
<u>Page 132</u> International Roaming Service (Left column at the top)	● You do not need to subscribe to the WORLD WING to use the international roaming service.	● You do not need to subscribe to the WORLD WING to use the international roaming service. However, if you subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but have not subscribed to the WORLD WING, you need to subscribe to the WORLD WING to use the service for the first time only. → p.24
<u>Page 158</u> Malfunction Checklist (Problem) I dialed a number and initiated the call, but all I hear is a busy tone	(Points to check) · Did you start dialing before hearing the dial tone? (Refer to) 30	(The descriptions on the left column deleted)
<u>Page 159</u> Malfunction Checklist (Problem) The other party's voice is difficult to hear during a call	(Points to check) · Is the "Volume" level set to zero? Change the volume level. (Refer to) 48	(The descriptions on the left column deleted)








## Using Network Services on the SIMPURE N









FOMA SIMPURE N  
FOMA N600i

The following network services can be accessed using the FOMA SIMPURE N. Please refer to the Network Service Operation Guide for more information on network service details and operations.

### How to interpret the table

- Network services can be operated using one of the following three methods: "operation following the screen menu options (operation from the terminal screen)", "operation using the dial pad" and "operation using the FOMA service codes".
- When "Using FOMA Service Codes", firstly, input all the codes like calling a number on the standby screen, then press .

	Using the Terminal	Using the Dial Pad	FOMA Service Codes / Comments		
	Terminal screen	Dial pad	Service code	Message displayed on the screen	What it means
<b>Voice Mail Service</b>					
Activating Voice Mail Service	○	①④①① 	-	-	-
Deactivating Voice Mail Service	○	①④①① 	-	-	-
Listening to, Saving and Deleting New Messages	○	①④①⑦  →①	-	-	-
Checking the Voice Mail Service Status	○	-	-	-	-
Listening to, Saving and Deleting Saved Messages	○	①④①⑥  →①	-	-	-
Contact the Voice Mail Service Center	○	-	-	-	-
Set Ring/ Vibration When Number of Messages Increases	○	-	-	-	-
Recording and Changing the Outgoing Message	-	①④①⑥  →⑨→②	-	-	-
Listening to the Number of the Incoming Call	-	①④①⑥  →⑨→③	-	-	-
Setting the Ring Duration	○	①④①⑨ 	-	-	-

	Using the Terminal	Using the Dial Pad	FOMA Service Codes / Comments		
	Terminal screen	Dial pad	Service code	Message displayed on the screen	What it means
Record an outgoing message for the Announcement Only function	-	①④①⑥  →⑨→①	-	-	-
Change your Announcement Only outgoing message	-	①④①⑥  →⑨→②	-	-	-
Switch the Outgoing Message between Voice Mail and Announcement Only	-	①④①⑥  →⑨→①	-	-	-
<b>Making Settings from Another Phone (Remote Access)</b>					
Activate Remote Access	-	①⑥⑨  →①	☎①②⑥④	125 *7 *1#	Will be activated.
			☎①②⑥④	125 *7 *3#	Currently activated.
			☎①②⑥④	125 *0#	Operation denied.
Deactivate Remote Access	-	①⑥⑨  →①	☎①②⑥④	125 *6 *2#	Will be deactivated.
			☎①②⑥④	125 *6 *0#	Currently deactivated.
			☎①②⑥④	125 *0#	Operation denied.
<b>Call Waiting Service</b>					
Activating Call Waiting Service	○	-	-	-	-
Deactivating Call Waiting Service	○	-	-	-	-
Checking the Call Waiting Service Status	○	-	-	-	-
<b>Call Forwarding Service</b>					
Registering Forwarding Numbers	○	①④②⑨  →③	-	-	-
Changing Your Forwarding Number	○	①④②⑨  →③	-	-	-
Activating Call Forwarding Service	○	①④②① 	-	-	-

	Using the Terminal	Using the Dial Pad	FOMA Service Codes / Comments		
	Terminal screen	Dial pad	Service code	Message displayed on the screen	What it means
Deactivating Call Forwarding Service	○	①④②⑦②		-	
Checking your Call Forwarding Settings	○	①④②⑦② →④		-	
Setting the Ring Duration	-	①④②⑦② →①		-	
Setting the Announcement (to set the announcement "on")	-	①④②⑦② →②		-	
Setting the Announcement (to set the announcement "off")	-	①④②⑦② →②		-	
Connecting Calls to Voice Mail Service Center When the Forwarding Number is Busy	○	①④②①②		-	

#### Making Settings from Another Phone (Remote Access)

Activate Remote Access	-	①⑤⑦② →①	Ⓜ①②⑤④	125 *7 *1#	Will be activated.
				125 *7 *3#	Currently activated.
				125 *0#	Operation denied.
Deactivate Remote Access	-	①⑤⑦② →⑥	Ⓜ①②⑤④	125 *6 *2#	Will be deactivated.
				125 *6 *0#	Currently deactivated.
				125 *0#	Operation denied.

#### Using Voice Mail When on the Line or Using I-mode

Activate Set Arrival Act	-	-	Ⓜ①④⑥④	146 *7#	Will be activated.
				146 *0#	Operation denied.
Deactivate Set Arrival Act	-	-	Ⓜ①④⑥④	146 *6#	Will be deactivated.
				146 *0#	Operation denied.

	Using the Terminal	Using the Dial Pad	FOMA Service Codes / Comments		
	Terminal screen	Dial pad	Service code	Message displayed on the screen	What it means
Check Set Arrival Act	-	-	Ⓜ④①④⑥ ④	146 *7#	Activated.
				146 *6#	Deactivated.
				125 *0#	Operation denied.

#### Dual Network Service

Switching Networks	-	①⑤④⑦② →A	Ⓜ①④⑦ ⓂA⑦	147 *7 *3#	Currently activated.
				147 *7 *1#	Will be activated.
				Error	Wrong network security code
				147 *0#	Operation denied.
For "A" in the "Service code" and "Numbers to dial" columns, enter a 4-digit network security code.					
Checking the Network Status	-	①⑤④⑥②	Ⓜ④①④⑦ ⑦	147 *7#	FOMA enabled.
				147 *6#	MOVA enabled.
				147 *0#	Operation denied.

#### English Announcement Service

Outgoing Call Setting	-	①④⑥⑧② →①	Ⓜ①④⑤ ⓂB④⑤	145 *7 *B *C#	Set to activate.
Incoming Call Setting	-	①④⑥⑧② →②	Ⓜ①④⑤ ⓂB④⑤	145 *7 *B *C#	Set to activate.
Outgoing Call and Incoming Call Setting	-	-	Ⓜ①④⑤⑧B ②C⑤	145 *7 *B *C#	Set to activate.
Checking the announcement	-	-	Ⓜ④①④⑤ ④	*145 *B *C#	Check the setting by the number of B and C.

#### Caller ID Notification Service

Display your Phone Number (Set Beforehand)	○	-	-	-	
--	---	---	---	---	--

	Using the Terminal	Using the Dial Pad	FOMA Service Codes / Comments		
	Terminal screen	Dial pad	Service code	Message displayed on the screen	What it means
Block your Phone Number (Set Beforehand)	○	—	—		
Display your Phone Number (Set for Each Call)	○	①⑧④D☎	For "D", enter the phone number of the person you want to call.		
Block your Phone Number (Set for Each Call)	○	①⑧④D☎	For "D", enter the phone number of the person you want to call.		
<b>Nuisance Call Blocking Service</b>					
Register Specific Phone Number for Call Blocking	—	①④④☎ →③	☎①②② ☎①③E☎	122 *1 *7#	Set to activate.
			For "E" in the "Service code", enter the phone number you want to block.		
Register Last Phone Number for Call Blocking	○	①④④☎ →②	—		
Delete the Oldest Registered Phone Number	—	—	☎①②② ☎③③☎	Oldest entry deleted	Bar nuisance call service denied
Delete the Last Phone Number	○	①④④☎ →④	—		
Clear Call Blocking List	○	①④④☎ →⑦	—		
<b>Caller ID Display Request Service</b>					
Activate the Caller ID Display Request Service	—	①④⑧☎ →①	☎①④⑧☎	149 *7 *1#	Will be activated.
			149 *7 *3#		
Deactivate the Caller ID Display Request Service	—	①④⑧☎ →①	☎①④⑧☎	149 *6#	Will be deactivated.
			149 *6#		

	Using the Terminal	Using the Dial Pad	FOMA Service Codes / Comments		
	Terminal screen	Dial pad	Service code	Message displayed on the screen	What it means
Check the Caller ID Display Request Service Settings	—	①④⑧☎	☎☎①④⑧☎ ☎	149 *7#	Activated.
			149 *6#		
<b>Public mode (power off)</b>					
Activate the Public mode	—	☎②⑤②⑤ ①☎	☎①③⑦☎ ①☎①☎	139 *1 *7 *3 *1#	Currently activated.
			139 *1 *7 *1 *1#		
Deactivate the Public mode	—	☎②⑤②⑤ ①☎	☎①③⑦☎ ①☎	139 *1 *6 *0 *0#	Currently deactivated.
			139 *1 *6 *2 *1#		
Checking the Public mode setting	—	☎②⑤②⑤ ⑦☎	☎☎①③⑦☎ ☎①☎	139 *1 *7 *1#	Currently activated.
			139 *1 *6 *0#		

## Using the i-mode Service/SMS

FOMA SIMPURE N  
FOMA N600i

The following i-mode services/ SMS can be accessed using the FOMA SIMPURE N. Please refer to the i-mode Operations Guide and the Network Service Operation Guide for more information on service details and operations.

\* : It is not possible to play the streaming type of i-motion contents. Also it is not possible to play the ASF type of i-motion contents. It may not be able to play i-motion files depending on content type.

※ : Chaku-Uta is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Services	Supported	Services	Supported	
<b>i-mode</b>				
Site access service	○	3D sound	×	
Internet Connection Service	○	i-motion	○*	
Access Restriction Function	○	Chaku-motion / Chaku-uta®	×	
Phone to / AV Phone to / Mail to / Web to	○	V-Live	×	
Bookmark	○	Chara-den	×	
Screen memo	○	SSL	○	
i-channel	×	Infrared communication feature	×	
Tokudane News Bin	○	Infrared remote control feature	×	
DoCoMo Coin	○	FOMA Card Restriction Functions	○	
Flash	×	Message R (request)	○	
PDF viewer	×	Message F (free)	○	
<b>i-mode mail</b>				
Send mail / Receive mail	○	Deco-mail	×	
Selective Mail Reception	○	Chat mail	×	
Replying to i-mode Mail	○	Phone to/ AV Phone to/ Mail to/Web to	○	
Forwarding i-mode Mail	○			
Message inquiry	○	Mail Address Settings	○	
Sending/Receiving i-shot Mail	○	Reject/Receive Mail Settings	○	
Sending i-motion Mail	○	Mail Size Limitation	○	
Receiving i-motion Mail	○	Suspend/Restart Mail	○	
<b>i-appli</b>				
i-appli	○	Pre-installed appli	G-GUIDE EPG Remote Controller	×
i-appli DX	×			
<b>Osaifu-Keitai (i-mode FeilCa)</b>				
Osaifu-Keitai	×	Pre-installed appli	e-money "Edy"	×
<b>World Service</b>				
International roaming	○	International MMS	○	
<b>SMS</b>				
Sending and Receiving SMS	○	SMS Center (SMSC) Selection	○	
Message Validity Period Setting	○	SMS Transmission Notice (Status Report) Setting	○	

# DoCoMo

## W-CDMA System

Thank you for choosing the FOMA N600i.

Please read this manual and the users guides that came with the battery pack and other devices carefully before and during use so that you can use the FOMA terminal correctly. If you have any inquiries regarding this manual, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover.

FOMA N600i is your efficient partner. Please use it carefully and habitually.

### Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA network operates using radio waves. In a place where the reception is very poor, such as in a tunnel, in a building and under the ground, or in an out-of-service area, you cannot make a phone call. You may also have difficulty making a phone call from the upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. And even if the reception is good (i.e. the signal strength indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during the call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, take care not to disturb the people around you.
- Since the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always a risk that your call is wiretapped by the third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports the tapping prevention for all calls. Even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where the reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what it actually is.
- It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of TLS/SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of TLS/SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of TLS/SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss.  
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrustrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and DoCoMo's roaming area.

### For the first-time user of the FOMA terminal

If you have never used any of the FOMA models, read this manual in the following steps.

Doing so will help you understand the preparation and basic operations for using the FOMA terminal.

1. Attach and charge the battery pack (p.24)
2. Turn on the FOMA terminal, make the initial settings, and check your own number (p.27, 28)
3. Check the functions of the keys on the phone (p.18)
4. Check the meanings of the icons appearing on the screen (p.20)
5. Check how to use the menus (p.22)
6. Check how to make/receive a call (p.30)

- In this manual for FOMA N600i, the FOMA N600i is described as the FOMA terminal.
- It is prohibited to reprint the whole or part of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual may change without prior notification.

# How to Use This Manual

## Descriptions in this manual (Quick Manual → p.172)

This manual presents the information in the following manner.  
"Overseas Use" describes useful information and cautions on using the FOMA terminal overseas.

Refer to "Overseas Use" when you use the FOMA terminal overseas. → p.131

Function name

Purpose and outline of the function

Information needed before starting

Step number

Operation

Screen as a key to the operation

Supplementary information on the operation

Advice or useful information

**Shooting Still Images**

Use the built-in camera to shoot still images.  
You can save the shots in the Camera folder under "My picture".

**1** On the standby screen  
◀ [Left] → [Camera] → "Photo mode"  
The Photo mode screen appears.  
To adjust the brightness  
Use [Up] to adjust the brightness  
To use the zoom  
Use [K] to adjust the zoom

**2** Point the camera at the object → [Shutter] or [Zoom]  
The incoming call lamp lights in red while shooting.  
The camera shoots an image, and the image checking screen appears.  
To retake the shot  
◀ [Right] → "YES"  
To compose an i-mode mail with the still image attached  
◀ [Left] → "Compose i-mode mail"  
"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.78

**3** The file name of the image is displayed, and you can edit the title.

**4**

**NOTE**

- Some images may go grainy, depending on the sizes.
- If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.

Function menu (Photo mode screen)	
Item	Description
Front camera / Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera → p.60
Movie mode	Changes to the Movie mode.
Select size	Select the image size from VGA(640x480), CIF(352x288), Stand-by(176x144), Mail(1176x144) and Mail(1152x96).
Storage setting	Sets the file size for shooting a still image. Unrestricted Shoots without restrictions on the file size. Restricted (Large) Shoots up to 100K bytes as the file size. Restricted (Small) Shoots up to 9K bytes as the file size. This option cannot be selected when the image size is VGA(640×480) or CIF(352×288).
White balance	Adjusts the colors according to the light. Auto Automatically corrects the color. Fine Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day. Cloudy Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade. Light bulb Is the mode suitable for shooting under the incandescence.
Color mode set	Sets the effects on the photographed images. Normal Shoots with the typical color setting. Sepia Shoots a sepia-tone image. Mono-chrome Shoots a black-and-white (monochrome) image.
Brightness	Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from "2" to "4".

Items displayed on the screen

Explanation of each item and operation

※ The contents and page numbers left may differ from the actual ones in this manual.

Page number

- In this manual, the screen is shown without the picture set by "Stand-by display" (p.50) in order to make the screens clear. Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are shown close up.
- This manual mainly explains the operations with the default settings. If you change the settings, the contents displayed on your FOMA terminal may differ from those on this manual. For the default settings, refer to "Menu Function List" (p.142).
- The screens inserted in this manual are only the images, which may look different from the actual screens.

The Quick Manual offers brief descriptions of the basic operations. The Quick Manual (Overseas Use) offers brief descriptions of the basic operations and the settings required for overseas use.




# Contents

How to Use This Manual.....	1	Checking the Phonebook Storage Status.....	45
Contents .....	2	Renaming Groups .....	45
Safety Precautions .....	4	Storing Your Personal Data .....	46
Handling with Care .....	12	Using Dialing Shortcuts .....	46
Intellectual Property Right .....	14	<b>Settings</b> .....	<b>47</b>
Main Components and Optional Equipment.....	16	Setting the Ring Tone.....	48
<b>Getting Started</b> .....	<b>17</b>	Setting the Date and Time.....	49
Component Names and Functions .....	18	Setting Manner mode.....	49
How to View the Display .....	20	Setting the Display and Light .....	50
Menu Functions .....	22	Setting Talk Functions.....	51
Using the FOMA Card (UIM).....	23	Setting Lock/Security .....	51
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack .....	24	Setting Network Functions .....	52
Charging .....	26	Setting Videophone .....	52
Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off.....	27	Setting Other Functions.....	52
Switching between Japanese and English.....	28	<b>Security Settings</b> .....	<b>55</b>
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number.....	28	Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal.....	56
Checking Your Own Phone Number .....	28	Changing Your Security Code .....	57
<b>Making/Receiving Phone Calls</b> .....	<b>29</b>	Changing PIN Code.....	57
Making a Call.....	30	Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal.....	58
Receiving a Call .....	31	Preventing Unwanted Mail Display .....	58
Using Public Mode (Driving Mode) .....	31	Enabling Call Rejection .....	58
Using Public Mode (Power off) .....	33	<b>Camera</b> .....	<b>59</b>
Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls .....	34	Before Using the Camera.....	60
Making International Calls.....	34	Shooting Still Images .....	61
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number.....	34	Shooting Movies.....	63
Using the Received Calls Record.....	35	<b>i-mode</b> .....	<b>65</b>
<b>Making/Receiving Videophone Calls</b> .....	<b>37</b>	What is i-mode?.....	66
What is Videophone?.....	38	Viewing Sites/Websites.....	67
Making a Videophone Call.....	38	Downloading Data from Sites .....	72
Receiving a Videophone Call.....	39	Using Message Service Functions .....	73
Changing Videophone Call Settings .....	40	Specifying Your i-mode Settings.....	76
<b>Using the Phonebook</b> .....	<b>41</b>	<b>Mail</b> .....	<b>77</b>
Phonebooks of the FOMA Terminal.....	42	What is i-mode Mail?.....	78
Adding Information to the Phonebook.....	42	Composing and Sending i-mode Mail.....	78
Searching the Phonebook.....	44		







Reading/Replying/Forwarding i-mode Mail.....	82	Entering Text.....	128
Setting Up the Mail Functions.....	90	Using Predictive Conversion.....	130
Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message).....	92	<b>Overseas Use</b> .....	<b>131</b>
Reading/Replying to/Forwarding SMS (Short Message).....	93	International Roaming Service.....	132
Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings.....	96	Checkpoints before Overseas Use.....	133
<b>i-appli</b> .....	<b>97</b>	Making/Receiving a Call at the Destination.....	136
What is an i-appli?.....	98	Settings Related to Overseas Use.....	137
Downloading i-appli from Sites.....	98	Using Network Services Overseas.....	138
Running i-appli.....	99	<b>Appendix</b> .....	<b>141</b>
Pre-installed software.....	99	Menu Function List.....	142
Setting i-appli.....	100	Character Allocation to Keypad.....	148
Upgrading i-appli.....	100	Symbols and Special Characters List.....	149
<b>Data Box</b> .....	<b>101</b>	Pictographs Symbols List.....	150
Displaying Still Images.....	102	Smiley Face Symbols List.....	151
Playing Movies/i-motion.....	104	Kuten Code List.....	152
Playing Melodies.....	106	Common Phrases List.....	156
<b>Other Useful Functions</b> .....	<b>109</b>	Services Available for the FOMA terminal.....	157
Multi Access.....	110	Options and Accessories.....	157
Using Schedule Function.....	111	Data Link Software.....	157
Setting the Alarm Clock.....	112	Malfunction Checklist.....	158
Using Calculator Function.....	113	If Any Error Message Appears.....	162
Composing Text Memo.....	113	Warranty and After-Sales Service.....	163
Using Common Phrases Function.....	114	Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones.....	165
Storing Frequently Used Words.....	114	<b>Index/Quick Manual</b> .....	<b>167</b>
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch.....	115	Index.....	168
<b>Network Services</b> .....	<b>117</b>	Quick Manual.....	172
Available Network Services.....	118		
Voice Mail Service.....	118		
Call Waiting.....	119		
Call Forwarding Service.....	120		
Bar Nuisance Calls Service.....	121		
Adding and Using Services.....	121		
Service Dialing No.....	122		
<b>Data Communication</b> .....	<b>123</b>		
Data Communication Available for the FOMA.....	124		
<b>Entering Text</b> .....	<b>127</b>		
Text Entry.....	128		

# Safety Precautions **Always follow these instructions**

- To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read the Safety Precautions carefully before you use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- The safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain the information intended to prevent the bodily injuries or the damage to the property.
- The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly:

 <b>DANGER</b>	 <b>WARNING</b>	 <b>CAUTION</b>
Indicates that the death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from the improper use.	Indicates that the death or serious bodily injury may result from the improper use.	Indicates that the bodily injury and/or damage to the property may result from the improper use.

- The following symbols indicate the specific directions:





 Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.	 No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near the water, which means that you must not wet it.
 No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.	 Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
 No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with your hand wet.	 Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power cord from the outlet.

- Safety Precautions are explained in the following categories:






1. Handling FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (Including Charger) and FOMA Card (Common) .....	5
2. Handling the FOMA Terminal .....	6
3. Handling the Battery Pack .....	8
4. Handling the Adapters (Including the Charger) .....	9
5. Handling the FOMA Card (UIM) .....	10
6. Handling the FOMA Terminal Near Electronic Medical Equipment .....	11

# 1. Handling FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (Including Charger) and FOMA Card (Common)






## DANGER

 Do	<p><b>Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for the FOMA terminal.</b> Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DoCoMo may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction. Battery Pack N12 FOMA AC Adapter 01 FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01 For information on other compatible products, contact the DoCoMo service counter.</p>
 No liquids	<p><b>Do not wet the devices.</b> Exposing the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.</p>
 No disassembly	<p><b>Do not try to disassemble or modify the FOMA terminal or other devices. Do not solder them.</b> Doing so may cause fire, injury, electric shock, malfunction, etc. Also, doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.</p>
 Don't	<p><b>Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal or other devices in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near fire, near heater, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.</b> Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the devices to be deformed or malfunction, lower the performance or shorten the life. Also, doing so may cause a part of the case to become hot and burn you.</p>

## WARNING



 Don't	<p><b>Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (including the charger) in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.</b> Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.</p>	 Don't	<p><b>Keep the conductive foreign matters (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert those matters inside.</b> This may result in the short-circuit causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.</p>
 Don't	<p><b>Do not shock or throw the FOMA terminal or other devices.</b> Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.</p>	 Do	<p><b>If you notice anything unusual about the FOMA terminal or other devices, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during the use, charging or storage, immediately:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Unplug the power cord from the outlet or socket.</li><li>2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.</li><li>3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.</li></ol> <p>Continuing to use the devices may cause overheat, explosion or ignition, or cause the battery pack to leak.</p>
 Don't	<p><b>Do not use the FOMA terminal or other devices at gas (petrol) station, etc. where it is possible to fire or explode.</b> Using the FOMA terminal in the dusty environment or near the flammable gas such as propane or gasoline may cause the explosion or fire.</p>		

## ⚠ CAUTION







 Do	<b>If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.</b> Improper usage could result in bodily injury.	 Don't	<b>Do not leave the devices on a slope or unstable surface.</b> The devices may fall to cause injury or malfunction.
 Don't	<b>Keep the devices away from humid, dusty or hot places.</b> Keeping them in such a place may cause malfunction.	 Do	<b>Keep the devices out of young children's reach.</b> A young child may swallow a device or suffer from the injury.
 Do	<b>Charging, shooting/playing a movie, talking on a videophone call or using i-mode/i-appli repeatedly or continuously for a long time may increase the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (including the charger).</b> Exposing your skin directly to the high-temperature part for a long time may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. Take great care especially when using the FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including the charger) continuously for a long time.		

## 2. Handling the FOMA Terminal






## ⚠ WARNING

 Don't	<b>Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.</b> From November 1st, 2004, the penalty is imposed on a driver who uses a mobile phone while driving. Even if you are using a hands-free kit, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. While driving, set Public mode or use the Voice Mail service.	 Do	<b>Turn off the FOMA terminal near the electronic equipment using the high-precision control or weak signals.</b>
			This may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment. * Take great care on the following electronic devices: Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals. If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by radio waves.

## WARNING

 Do	<p><b>Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where it is prohibited to use the mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.</b> Using the FOMA terminal in such a place may affect the electronic or medical equipment. If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the automatic power-on function, make sure to set OFF to the function before turning off the FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions provided by the medical facility about using the mobile phone. If you use the phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.</p>	 Don't	<p><b>If you are wearing electronic medical equipment on your body, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.</b> The FOMA terminal is a folding type and uses a magnet to detect that the FOMA terminal is folded. Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction due to the effect of the magnet.</p>
 Do	<p><b>If you have a weak heart, you should take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring volume functions for incoming calls.</b> Your heart may be adversely affected.</p>	 Do	<p><b>Hold the FOMA terminal off your ear and keep enough distance from it when you talk in the hands-free mode.</b> It may affect your hearing or cause interference to your ears.</p>
 Do	<p><b>If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn off the FOMA terminal and take shelter in a safe location.</b> There is a risk of being struck by the lightning and suffering electric shock.</p>	 Don't	<p><b>Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as a problem may occur due to air bag inflation.</b> The air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.</p>

## CAUTION

 Do	<p><b>In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.</b> Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal might impair the safe driving.</p>	 Don't	<p><b>Do not let the FOMA terminal come close to or sandwich magnetic cards or another magnetic recording media between the FOMA terminal.</b> The magnetic data stored on cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.</p>
 Don't	<p><b>Do not swing the FOMA terminal holding its strap or other parts.</b> The FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury, malfunction or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.</p>	 Do	<p><b>If the display or camera lens is broken, be careful of the broken glass.</b> The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause injury.</p>
 Don't	<p><b>Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card (UIM) slot on the FOMA terminal.</b> Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.</p>		

## ⚠ CAUTION



Don't

**Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to the direct sunlight for a long time.**

The condensing function of the lens may cause fire or malfunction.



Do

**Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.**



Do

**Take care not to pinch your finger in the hinge part when you open the FOMA terminal.**

This may cause injury.

## 3. Handling the Battery Pack

■ Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack.

Label description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

## ⚠ DANGER



Don't

**Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.**

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Don't

**Do not let wire or other metals come close to the terminal. Also, do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.**

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Don't

**If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use the excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing in the correct direction before you try to attach it.**

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do

**If battery fluid comes into your eyes, do not rub your eyes, but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water and see a doctor.**

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.



Don't

**Do not puncture the battery pack, hit it with a hammer or step on it.**

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

## WARNING



If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging. Continuing to charge may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, stop using it immediately and keep it away from flame or fire.  
The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.



If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.  
Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

## CAUTION



**Do not dispose of used battery packs with ordinary garbage.**

Throwing battery packs out with ordinary garbage constitutes an environmental hazard and may cause the garbage to catch fire. Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs and return them to the DoCoMo service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose of the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

## 4. Handling the Adapters (Including the Charger)

### WARNING



**Use the specified power supply and voltage.**

Using the incorrect voltage may cause fire or malfunction. If you use the FOMA terminal overseas, take the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use O1 with you.  
FOMA AC Adapter O1:  
AC Adapter: AC100V  
FOMA AC Adapter O1 for Global Use:  
100V to 240V AC (should be plugged into a power outlet for home use)



**Do not touch the adapter (including the charger) cable or power outlet with wet hands.**

Doing so may cause electric shock.



**Do not short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is plugged to a power outlet or car cigarette lighter socket. Also, take care for a part of your body (hand, finger, etc.) not to come into contact with the charging terminal.**  
Doing so may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.



**The DC adapter shall be used only for vehicles with a negative ground. Do not use the adapter in a positively grounded vehicle.**

Use in a positively grounded vehicle may cause a fire.



**Do not use the AC adapter in humid or steamy locations such as bathroom.**

Doing so may cause electric shock.



**If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with the specified type of fuse.**







Using the incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.







**Wipe off any dust on the charger plug or adapter plug.**

The dust may cause fire.

## ⚠ WARNING


 Don't	<b>Do not use the damaged adapter (including the charger) cable or power cord.</b> Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or overheat.	 Don't	<b>Do not touch the FOMA terminal, adapter or charger when you hear a crash of thunder.</b> There is a risk of being struck by the lightning and suffering electric shock.
 Unplug	<b>Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet when it will be left unused for a long period.</b> Failure to observe this precaution may result in fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.	 Don't	<b>Place the charger on a stable surface during charging. Take care not to cover or wrap the charger with clothing or bedding.</b> Failure to observe this precaution may cause the FOMA terminal to fall off, overheat, catch fire or malfunction.
 Unplug	<b>If any water or other liquid gets into the adapter or charger, immediately unplug it from the power outlet or car cigarette lighter socket.</b> Water in the adapter or charger may cause electric shock, smoke emission or fire.	 Do	<b>When plugging the AC adapter into a power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.</b> Failure to observe this precaution may cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

## ⚠ CAUTION

 Unplug	<b>Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or socket before cleaning the adapter or charger.</b> Failure to observe this precaution may cause electric shock.	 Don't	<b>Do not charge the wet battery pack.</b> Doing so may cause the battery pack to overheat, explode or ignite.
 Don't	<b>Do not put heavy objects on the power cord, adapter cable or charger cable.</b> Doing so may cause fire or electric shock.	 Do	<b>Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter or charger from the power outlet or socket. Do not pull on the cable itself.</b> Pulling on the cable may damage the cable and cause electric shock or fire.

## 5. Handling the FOMA Card (UIM)

## ⚠ CAUTION

 Do	<b>Be careful when removing the FOMA card (UIM) (IC part).</b> This may injure your hands or fingers.
---	--

## 6. Handling the FOMA Terminal Near Electronic Medical Equipment

- The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, Japan, regarding how to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones:

### WARNING



Do

**If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away.**

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Do

**Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.**

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Do

**Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities:**

- Do not take the FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off the FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off the FOMA terminal even if you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- If a medical facility gives specific instructions prohibiting you from carrying or using mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If the FOMA terminal is equipped with the automatic power-on function, make sure to set OFF to the function before turning off the FOMA terminal.



Do

**Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) that are using electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.**  
Radio waves may affect the operations of the electronic or medical equipment.

# Handling with Care

## General notes

### Do not wet the devices.

- The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter and charger are not waterproof. Do not use them in humid or steamy locations such as bathrooms or expose them to rain or other forms of moisture. If you carry the FOMA terminal close to your skin, perspiration may cause internal components to corrode and result in malfunction. If the problem is found to be due to moisture, it will not be covered by the warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even if it can be repaired, you will be charged since the damage is not covered by the warranty.

### Clean with a soft, dry cloth.

- Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and clean it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). The LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.
- Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents as these agents may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.

### Occasionally clean the connectors with a dry cotton bud.

- Leaving connectors soiled may result in poor connections and loss of power. Also, as it may cause insufficient charging, clean the connectors with a dry cloth or cotton bud when they are soiled.

### Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioning vent.

- Condensation may occur due to rapid temperature changes, and this may cause internal corrosion and malfunction.

### Do not leave the FOMA terminal in locations where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in a bag filled with other objects or in your hip pocket when you sit down. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage to the LCD or other internal components. Such damage is not covered by the warranty.

### Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapter and charger carefully.

## Handling the FOMA terminal

### Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.

- Use the FOMA terminal within a temperature range between 5°C and 35°C with humidity between 45% and 85%.

### The FOMA terminal may become warm while being used or charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.

Using the FOMA terminal close to home (landline) phone, TV or radio may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far as possible away from such devices before using the FOMA terminal.

### It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA card (UIM).

### Do not put the FOMA terminal in your hip pocket when you sit down. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Doing so may cause malfunction.

### Do not fold the FOMA terminal with its strap placed between the upper part and lower part of the handset.

- Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.

### Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight.

- Doing so may discolor or burn the element.

## Handling the battery pack

### The battery pack is a consumable item.

- If the battery pack does not work after it is fully charged, it is time to exchange it. Exchange it for a new battery pack with the same specifications.

### Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).

Make sure to charge the battery when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or if you have not used it for a long period. The available operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions under which you use it and the condition of the battery pack itself.

Keep the battery pack in a cool and dry place away from direct sunlight.

- If you do not use the battery pack for a long period, use up the battery, remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger), and keep it in the plastic bag where it was in.

## Handling the adapter (including the charger)

---

**Do not charge the battery pack:**

- In a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 5°C or higher than 35°C
- In a humid, dusty or shaky place
- Near your home phone, TV or radio

The adapter or charger may become warm while being charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.

**Do not use the DC adapter to charge battery packs when the car engine is not running.**

- Doing so may drain the car battery.

If you use an outlet that provides pull-out prevention, follow the instructions of the outlet manual.

**Do not shock the adapter or charger. Do not deform the charging terminal or terminal guide.**

- Doing so may cause malfunction.

## Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

---

When inserting the FOMA card (UIM) into the FOMA terminal, do not apply unnecessary force.

The FOMA card (UIM) may become warm while being used or charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.

Always keep the IC part clean.

Clean with a soft, dry cloth.

It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on the FOMA card (UIM).

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA card (UIM).

To preserve the environment, take used FOMA card (UIM) to the DoCoMo service counter.

**Do not use the FOMA card (UIM) in extremely high or low temperatures.**

The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card (UIM) into some other type of IC card reader/writer. It is your responsibility.

**Do not scratch, touch or short-circuit the IC carelessly.**

- Doing so may cause loss of data or malfunction.

**Do not drop or shock the FOMA card (UIM).**

- Doing so may cause malfunction.


**Do not bend the FOMA card (UIM) or put something heavy on it.**

- Doing so may cause malfunction.

## Handling the camera

---

If you inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be punished by respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).

 Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

# Intellectual Property Right

## Copyright and portrait right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit contents such as text, images, music or software that were photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from Internet website, which are under third-party copyright, without the permission of the copyright holder, although it is permitted under copyright law to duplicate or quote the contents for personal use.

It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.

Shooting a photo of someone with the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot with the FOMA terminal on the website without his or her permission may be a breach of portrait right.

## Trademarks and registered trademarks

All brand names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-appli", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "i-motion", "Message F", "mopera", "mopera U", "i-motion mail", "i-shot", "sigmarion", "musea", "Short mail", "FOMA" logo and "i-mode" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- キャッチホン (Call Waiting) is registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.
- NetFront and **NetFront** are registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
- JV-Lite2 and **JV-Lite2** are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.  
Copyright© 1996-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- "ATOK" and "APOT (Advanced Prediction Optimization Technology)" are registered trademarks of Justsystem Corporation.



## Others

- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and it is permitted to use for personal purpose and for nonprofit purpose only when you:
  - Record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
  - Play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the personal and nonprofit activities
  - Play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA
- When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:  
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501  
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239  
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338  
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569  
5,710,784 5,778,338
- This product is equipped with NetFront v3.2 for FOMA Internet Edition as the internet function.
- NetFront v3.2 is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.

## Description of Windows

---

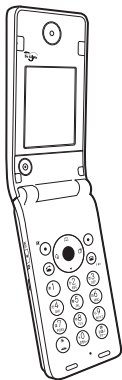
- Windows<sup>®</sup> 98 stands for Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 98 operating system.
- Windows<sup>®</sup> 98SE stands for Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 98 Second Edition operating system.
- Windows<sup>®</sup> Me stands for Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Professional stands for Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows<sup>®</sup> XP stands for Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Professional operating system or Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Home Edition operating system.
- This manual describes Windows<sup>®</sup> 98 and Windows<sup>®</sup> 98SE as Windows 98.
- This manual describes Windows<sup>®</sup> Millennium Edition as Windows Me.
- This manual describes Windows<sup>®</sup> 2000 Professional as Windows 2000.
- This manual describes Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Professional and Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Home Edition as Windows XP.

# Main Components and Optional Equipment

## Main components

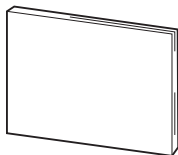
### FOMA N600i

(Including the warranty and Back Cover N11)



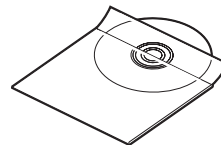
### Manual for FOMA N600i

(This manual)



※The Quick Manual starts on p.172.

### FOMA N600i CD-ROM



### Battery Pack N12

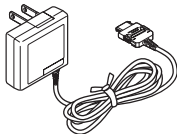
(Including the manual)



## Optional equipment

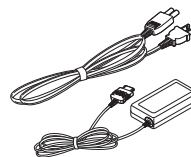
### FOMA AC Adapter 01

(Including the warranty and manual)



### FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01

(Including the warranty and manual)



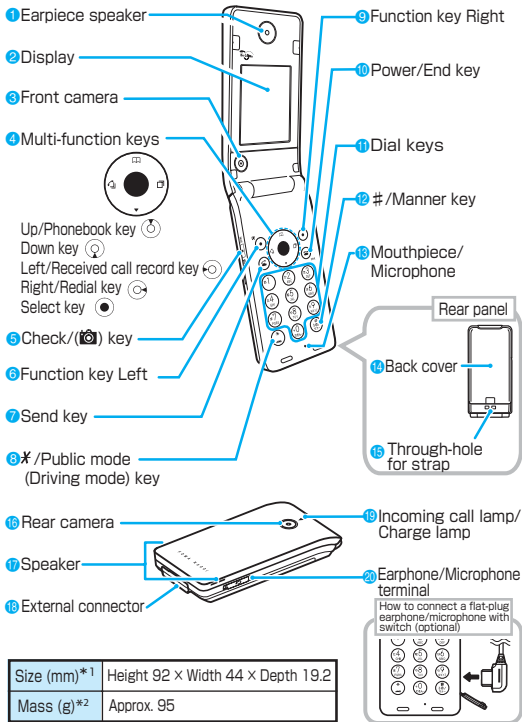
Other options and accessories → p.157

# Getting Started

<b>Component Names and Functions</b> .....	<b>18</b>
<b>How to View the Display</b> .....	<b>20</b>
<b>Menu Functions</b> .....	<b>22</b>
<b>Using the FOMA Card (UIM)</b> .....	<b>23</b>
Inserting/Removing the FOMA card (UIM) .....	23
PIN codes for the FOMA card (UIM) .....	23
FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction function .....	23
FOMA card (UIM) functional differences .....	24
<b>Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack</b> .....	<b>24</b>
Inserting the battery pack .....	24
Removing the battery pack .....	25
Battery life.....	25
<b>Charging</b> .....	<b>26</b>
Charging the FOMA terminal .....	26
When the battery runs out .....	26
<b>Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off</b> .....	<b>27</b>
Turning the FOMA terminal on .....	27
Turning the FOMA terminal off.....	27
Setting the default.....	27
<b>Switching between Japanese and English</b> .....	<b>&lt;Select language&gt;28</b>
<b>Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number ...</b> <Notify Caller ID >	<b>28</b>
<b>Checking Your Own Phone Number</b> .....	<b>&lt;Own number&gt;28</b>

# Component Names and Functions

This manual uses the following icons for each keys:
















Size (mm)*1	Height 92 × Width 44 × Depth 19.2
Mass (g)*2	Approx. 95

\*1: Height and depth are for the FOMA terminal when folded.

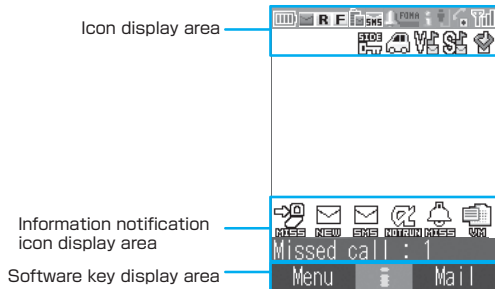
\*2: When the battery pack is attached.

- 1 Earpiece speaker
  - Allows you to hear the other party's voice.
- 2 Display
  - How to View the Display→p.20
- 3 Front camera
  - Used to send your video to the other party during a videophone call.→p.38
  - Used to shoot your pictures (still images) and movies.→p.61, 63
- 4 Multi-function keys
  - Up/Phonebook key (☺)
    - Moves the cursor upward.
    - Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana, alphabets and numbers.→p.128
    - Displays the volume screen by holding down for 1 second or longer. You can control the volume by pressing (☺).
    - Displays the Phonebook menu screen.→p.41
    - Scrolls up the display. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
  - Down key (☹)
    - Moves the cursor downward.
    - Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana, alphabets and numbers.→p.128
    - Displays the volume screen by holding down for 1 second or longer. You can control the volume by pressing (☹).
    - Scrolls down the display. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
  - Left/Received call record key (☎)
    - Moves the cursor to the left.
    - Displays the received call record.→p.35
    - Scrolls the display back to the previous screens by page.
  - Right/Redial key (☎)
    - Moves the cursor to the right.
    - Displays the redial record.→p.34
    - Scrolls the display to the next screens by page.
  - Select key (●)
    - Confirms an operation.
    - Executes an operation displayed on the software key at the bottom-center of the screen.→p.21
    - Displays the i-mode menu.→p.65
- 5 Check/(📷) key (referred to as "side key" in this manual.)
  - Checks for missed calls and new mails with the FOMA terminal folded.→p.21
  - Activates the camera by holding down for 1 second or longer with the FOMA terminal open.→p.59

- 6 Function key Left  [Left]
  - Executes an operation displayed on the software key at the bottom-left of the screen. → p.21
  - Displays i-appli menu by holding down for 1 second or longer. → p.97
- 7 Send key 
  - Makes a voice call. → p.30
  - Answers a voice call. → p.31
  - Answers a videophone call. → p.39
- 8  /Public mode (Driving mode) key 
  - Enters \*, "http://" or other character strings.
  - Sets the Public mode by holding down for 1 second or longer on the standby screen. → p.31
  - Enters P (pause) by holding down for 1 second or longer while entering a phone number.
    - ※ : You cannot enter P (pause) at the beginning of a phone number or more than one P in a row.
- 9 Function key Right  [Right]
  - Executes an operation displayed on the software key at the bottom-right of the screen. → p.21
  - Displays the Mail menu. → p.77
  - Check new messages by holding down for 1 second or longer. → p.75, 83
- 10 Power/End key 
  - Turns on the power by holding down for 1 second or longer. → p.27
  - Turns off the power by holding down for 2 seconds or longer. → p.27
  - Ends a call.
- 11 Dial keys  ~ 
  - Used for entering a phone number → p.30, 38
  - Used for entering characters and numbers → p.127
  - Enters \*+\* by holding down  for 1 second or longer. → p.136, 138
  - Displays the Voice mail screen by holding down  for 1 second or longer. → p.118
- 12  /Manner key 
  - Used for entering \*#\* or symbols.
  - Sets the Manner mode by holding down for 1 second or longer. → p.49
- 13 Mouthpiece/Microphone
  - Conveys your voice from here. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. This may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
  - Used as the microphone when you shoot a movie using the camera.
- 14 Back cover
- 15 Through-hole for strap
- 16 Rear camera
  - Used to send images such as scenery to the other party during a videophone call. → p.38
  - Used to shoot pictures (still images) such as scenery and movies. → p.61, 63
- 17 Speaker
  - Emits the sounds such as the ring tone and voice of the other party during the hands-free mode.
- 18 External connector
  - Used to connect optional external devices to the FOMA terminal.
- 19 Incoming call lamp/Charge lamp
  - Flashes when you receive a voice call, videophone call, as well as mails, MessageR (Request) or MessageF (Free).
  - The light turns red during charging.
- 20 Earphone/Microphone terminal
  - Used to plug in the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). → p.115

## How to View the Display

The following items are displayed on the display.



### Icons displayed in the icon display area

Icon	Description	Refer to
	Battery fully charged	—
	Battery partially charged	—
	Battery low	—
	Battery very low	—
	Battery almost empty ※ The indicated battery level is reference only.	—
	You have an unread mail	82
	Inbox full	82
	You have an unread MessageR (Request)	73
	MessageR (Request) full	75
	You have an unread MessageF (Free)	73
	MessageF (Free) full	75
	You have a mail at the i-mode Center	83
	Your mail storage at the i-mode Center full	83

Icon	Description	Refer to
	You have a MessageR (Request) at the i-mode Center	75
	Your MessageR (Request) storage at the i-mode Center full	75
	You have a MessageF (Free) at the i-mode Center	75
	Your MessageF (Free) storage at the i-mode Center full	75
	You have an unread SMS (Short Message)	93
	SMS (Short Message) full	93
	SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) full	—
	Schedule or alarm clock set to on	111, 112
	Connected to the FOMA network	132, 135
	Connected to the 3G network	132, 135
	Connected to the GSM/GPRS network	132, 135
	i-mode active	—
	i-mode communication in progress	—
	Packet communication in progress	—
	Packet communication in progress (originating)	—
	Packet communication in progress (sending and receiving)	—
	USB cable connected	—
	Voice call active	30
	Videophone active	38
	Signal strength level	27
	Displayed when the FOMA terminal is either out of the service area or when the radio wave is out of reach	27
	Side keys are locked when your phone is closed	52
	Public mode active	31
	Vibrator active	48
	Ring volume set to "silent"	48
	In Manner mode	49

## Icons displayed in the information notification area

The icons displayed in the information notification area indicate receiving/activation status of various functions. You can move the cursor to an information notification icon by pressing . If more than one information notification icon is displayed, use to select one of them. Pressing will activate the selected function.

The information provided by each icon and the display/activation details after selection is shown below.

Icon	Information provided	Subsequent display/activation details	Refer to
	Notifies you of missed calls.	Displays the missed calls record.	35
	Notifies you that you have received a new mail.	Displays the Inbox folder containing your latest mail.	86
	Notifies you that you have received a new SMS (Short Message).	Displays the unread SMS folder list containing your latest SMS (Short Message).	94
	Notifies you that the FOMA terminal failed to automatically launch an i-appli.	Displays the Auto start failure screen.	100
	Notifies you that the alarm of a scheduled event or alarm clock did not sound. This icon is also displayed when you could not respond to the alarm.	Displays a list of alarms that did not sound or that were not responded.	111 112
	Notifies you that messages have been recorded to the Voice mail service center.	Launches the Voice mail service.	118

## NOTE

- Clock is not displayed while an information notification icon is selected.
- You can check for missed calls and new mails by pressing with the FOMA terminal folded.
  - If you have missed calls or new mails, the incoming call lamp flashes in blue.
  - If you have neither missed calls nor new mails, the incoming call lamp flashes in green.
  - Unless the vibrator is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal also uses the vibration to notify you of missed calls or new mails.

## Software key display area

To run the displayed software key, press the corresponding function keys.

### ■ To run the software key ①

Press [Left]

Pressing [Left] while [Menu] is displayed will display the function menu.

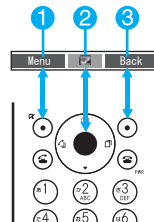
### ■ To run the software key ②

Press [Right]

Pressing [Right] while "\*" or other is displayed will confirm the operation.

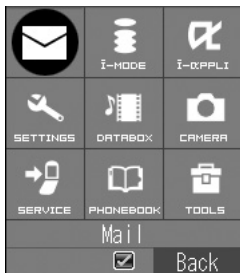
### ■ To run the software key ③

Press [Right]



## Menu Functions

To set or check various functions with the FOMA terminal, you can call up each function from the main menu. On the standby screen, press [Left] to display the main menu. The structure of the menus is as follows:



Menu	Function	Refer to
<b>Mail</b>	Read sent/received mails, compose and send new mails. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Inbox</li> <li>· Outbox</li> <li>· Draft</li> <li>· Compose message</li> <li>· Check new message</li> <li>· Receive option</li> <li>· SMS</li> <li>· Mail settings</li> </ul>	77
<b>i-mode</b>	Use i-mode services to access website, etc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· iMenu</li> <li>· Bookmark</li> <li>· Screen memo</li> <li>· Last URL</li> <li>· Go to location</li> <li>· Message</li> <li>· Check new message</li> <li>· i-mode settings</li> </ul>	65
<b>i-appli</b>	Find useful applications. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Software list</li> <li>· <math>\alpha</math>Display light</li> <li>· <math>\alpha</math> Vibrator</li> <li>· Auto start failure</li> </ul>	97

Menu	Function	Refer to
<b>Settings</b>	Change the settings to customize your FOMA terminal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Incoming/Volume</li> <li>· Clock</li> <li>· Manner mode</li> <li>· Display</li> <li>· Talk</li> <li>· Lock/Security</li> <li>· Connection setting</li> <li>· Video-phone</li> <li>· Other settings</li> </ul>	47
<b>Data box</b>	Enjoy picture, movie, music, etc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· My picture</li> <li>· i-motion</li> <li>· Melody</li> <li>· Memory info</li> </ul>	101
<b>Camera</b>	Take pictures and movies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Photo mode</li> <li>· Movie mode</li> </ul>	59
<b>Service</b>	Change the settings of network services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Check messages</li> <li>· Notify caller ID</li> <li>· Voice mail</li> <li>· Call waiting</li> <li>· Call forwarding</li> <li>· Bar nuisance call</li> <li>· Additional service</li> <li>· Service dialing No.</li> </ul>	117
<b>Phonebook</b>	Add data to phonebook, search data in phonebook, or change the settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Add to phonebook</li> <li>· Search phonebook</li> <li>· Call rejection</li> <li>· No. of phonebook</li> <li>· Group setting</li> <li>· Call data</li> <li>· Own number</li> </ul>	41
<b>Tools</b>	Find useful functions such as schedule, calculator, etc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Schedule</li> <li>· Alarm clock</li> <li>· Calculator</li> <li>· Text memo</li> <li>· Common phrases</li> <li>· Own dictionary</li> </ul>	109

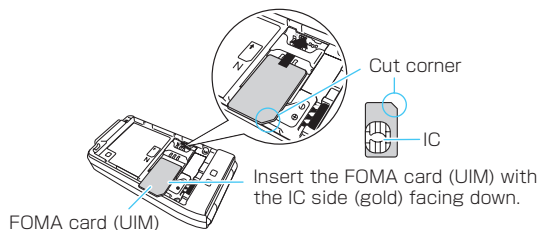
## Using the FOMA Card (UIM)

The FOMA card (UIM) is an IC card that contains private information such as your phone number.

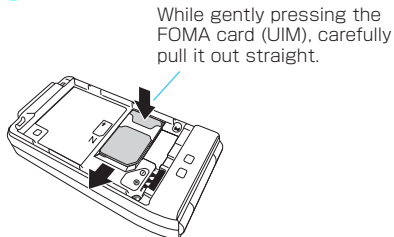
### Inserting/removing the FOMA card (UIM)

- Before inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM), turn off the power, remove the battery pack, and close the FOMA terminal.

#### Inserting



#### Removing



### NOTE

- Note that using excessive force to insert or remove the FOMA card (UIM) could damage the card.
- Take care not to touch or scratch on the IC part of the FOMA terminal.

## PIN codes for the FOMA card (UIM)

You can set two PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes, PIN1 and PIN2, for the FOMA card (UIM).

The PIN1 code is a 4 to 8 digit PIN code to be entered every time the FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use by third parties.

The PIN2 code is a 4 to 8 digit number that is required as personal authentication for access to online services such as Internet connection and site access. (The FOMA terminal provides no functions that require the PIN2 code.)

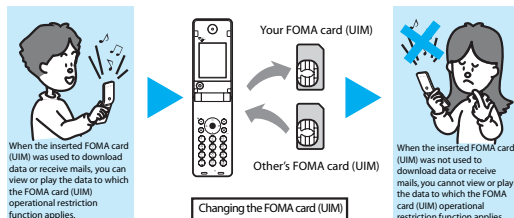
- When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card (UIM), use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set to the current card.

## FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction function

The FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction function is a security function to protect your data and files. When you download data from i-mode sites or websites or receive files attached to i-mode mail, the FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction function is automatically set.

Data and files with the FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction function are accessible only when the FOMA card (UIM) used for downloading such data or file is inserted.

If you replace the FOMA card (UIM) with another one, the "i" mark is displayed for the data and files with the FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction function.



## FOMA card (UIM) functional differences

There are 2 versions in the FOMA card (UIM). Please note that there are the following functional differences when you use different FOMA cards (UIM) on the FOMA terminal.

Feature	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)
Max number of digits for phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	20 digits max.	26 digits max.
WORLD WING	Not available	Available
Service dialing number	Not available	Available

### WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that allows you to use the same mobile phone number in overseas countries to make and receive calls by inserting the "FOMA card (green)" into the compatible FOMA terminal or overseas mobile phone (W-CDMA or GSM). You do not need to subscribe to the WORLD WING to use the service.

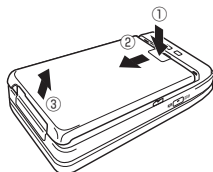
※: If you subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but have not subscribed to the WORLD WING, you need to subscribe to the WORLD WING to use the service.

※: This service cannot be used with some billing plans.

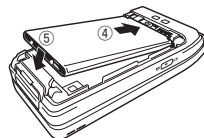
## Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack

- Be sure to turn the FOMA terminal off before inserting/removing the battery pack.
- It is recommended to hold the FOMA terminal in your hand when inserting/removing the battery pack.

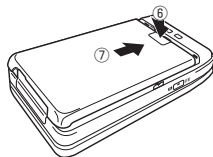
### Inserting the battery pack



Press the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② as you lift the back cover in direction ③.

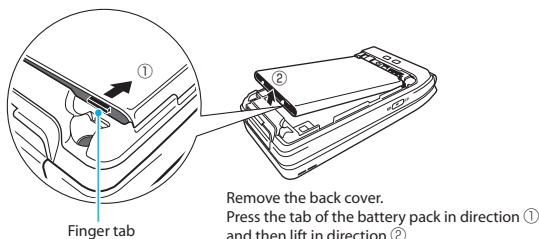


With the note on the battery pack facing up, insert the battery pack in direction ④. Make sure that the metallic contacts on the battery pack and the FOMA terminal (Phone) touch, and then press the battery pack down in direction ⑤.



Leave a gap of approximately 3mm at the end of the back cover and align it to the groove on the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑥ and slide the back cover in direction ⑦. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.

## Removing the battery pack



### NOTE

- Note that using excessive force to insert the battery pack could damage the charging terminals in the FOMA terminal.

## Battery usage time

The battery duration varies depending on the charging time and the deterioration of the battery.

Network <sup>**</sup>	Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
FOMA/3G	Voice call: Approx. 140 min. Videophone call: Approx. 90 min.	Stationary: Approx. 350 hours Moving: Approx. 250 hours
GPRS/GSM	Voice call: Approx. 170 min.	Approx. 250 hours

<sup>\*\*</sup> : For available networks for the FOMA terminal, refer to p.132, and for available services for each network, refer to p.135.

- The continuous talk time is an estimated time you can talk while radio waves are strong enough to send and receive.
- The continuous standby time is an estimated time when radio waves are strong enough to receive properly with the FOMA terminal folded. Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery level, the function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). Using i-mode will decrease the talk (communication) and standby times. Even when you do not talk on the phone or use i-mode, creating i-mode mail or starting downloaded i-appli will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.

- The standby time in stationary is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and standing still while radio waves can be normally received.
- The standby time in moving is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded under condition of "stationary", "moving" within the area where radio waves can be normally received, and "out of service area".
- Performing data communication or multi access or using the camera will also shorten the talk (communication) and standby times.

## Battery life

To maintain full performance of the FOMA terminal, use the specified Battery Pack N12 for the FOMA terminal.

- The battery pack has a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as it did when new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. Note that it may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.

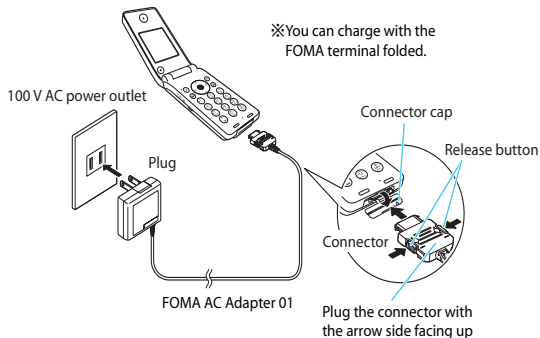


To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, the recycle shop, etc.

## Charging

### Charging the FOMA terminal

- The standard charging time is approximately 180 minutes.
- The procedure for charging the FOMA terminal using the FOMA AC Adapter O1 is taken as an example here.



- 1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal
- 2 Plug the AC adapter connector horizontally into the external connector of the FOMA terminal

- 3 Plug the AC adapter into the outlet

Charging starts.

- The charge lamp lights red during charging. The charge lamp turns off when charging ends. If the FOMA terminal is turned on, "🔋" flashes during charging and "🔋" lights when charging ends.

- 4 When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons

- Be sure to remove the connector horizontally while pressing the release buttons. Using excessive force may cause malfunction.

- 5 Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet
- 6 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

#### NOTE

- When the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal (Phone) flashes, disconnect the AC adapter from the FOMA terminal and remove the battery pack. Then set them again for recharging. If the charge lamp flashes again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adapter. Contact a NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.
- If the phone is turned off when charging starts, the charge lamp does not light immediately but after a while.

#### When the battery runs out

The low-battery alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power will turn off in about one minute. To stop this alarm, press any key.

#### NOTE

- During a call, the low-battery alarm is notified by 3 short beeps from the earpiece speaker. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power will turn off in about one minute.

## Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off

- When you start using the FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period), charge the battery.
- Before turning the FOMA terminal on, make sure that the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted correctly.

### Turning the FOMA terminal on

#### 1 (1 second or longer)

The FOMA terminal turns on and the standby screen appears.

##### ■ When "圏外" appears

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as "T1" appears. The reception level for the FOMA terminal is as follows:

T1 → T2 → T3

##### ■ When the PIN1 code entry is set to "ON"

The PIN1 code entry screen appears. If you enter the correct PIN code, the standby screen appears.

##### ■ If you turn on the FOMA terminal for the first time

Perform the initial setting → p.27

#### NOTE

- Since the FOMA terminal is capable of international roaming, it may need some time to search for the corresponding network immediately after turning on the power. "圏外" may appear during search.

### Turning the FOMA terminal off

#### 1 (2 seconds or longer)

The shutdown screen appears and the FOMA terminal turns off.

## Setting the default

When you turn on the FOMA terminal for the first time, the initial setting confirmation screen appears. If you select "YES", you can set "Date setting", "Time setting", "Security code" and "Keypad volume".

#### 1 "YES" on the initial setting screen

#### 2 Set the date

· Date setting → p.49

#### 3 Set the time

· Clock setting → p.49


#### 4 Change your security code

· Changing Your Security Code → p.57

#### 5 Change the keypad volume

· Changing the keypad volume → p.48

#### NOTE

- Even if specification of the initial settings is interrupted because you press the  key, the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.

<Select language>

## Switching between Japanese and English

You can switch between Japanese and English for displaying the function names or messages on the screen or image display.

- When you have the FOMA card (UIM) inserted, the setting of "Select language" is stored in the FOMA card (UIM).

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings)  
→ "Display"

2 "Select language (バイリンガル)"

■ To change from Japanese to English

"English"

■ To change from English to Japanese



"日本語"

<Notify Caller ID>

## Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

The FOMA terminal can send your phone number to the other party's phone when you make a call. Since the phone number is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.

- You cannot change the Notify Caller ID settings when "圏外" is displayed. Move to an area where the signal reception is good to change the settings.
- The Notify Caller ID service is only available if the other party's phone supports caller ID display.
- For details of the Notify Caller ID service, refer to "Network Service Operation Guide".

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service)  
→ "Notify Caller ID"

2 "Activate" → "ON"/"OFF" → Enter the network security code

The Notify caller ID settings is set to on or off.



■ To check the Notify Caller ID setting

"Status request"

<Own number>

## Checking Your Own Phone Number

You can display and check your phone number (own number) stored in your FOMA card (UIM).

1 On the standby screen  [Left] → 

### NOTE

- Your personal information (name, reading and mail address) can be stored. → p.46

# Making/Receiving Phone Calls

<b>Making a Call.....</b>	<b>30</b>
When you make a mistake dialing a number.....	30
<b>Receiving a Call.....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Using Public Mode (Driving Mode) .....&lt;Public Mode (Driving mode)&gt;</b>	<b>31</b>
If the Public mode (Driving mode) is set.....	32
<b>Using Public Mode (Power off) .....&lt;Public Mode (Power off)&gt;</b>	<b>33</b>
If the Public mode (power off) is set.....	33
<b>Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID for Individual Calls.....</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>Making International Calls..... &lt;WORLD CALL&gt;</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>Dialing a Previously Dialed Number ..... &lt;Redial&gt;</b>	<b>34</b>
<b>Using the Received Calls Record..... &lt;Received calls&gt;</b>	<b>35</b>

## Making a Call

### 1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

The **phone number entry screen** appears.


- A number of up to 57 digits can be entered for making a call.



### 2 Press

When the other party answers the call, the **in-call screen** is displayed, and you can talk.

#### ■ To switch to hands-free operation during a call

Press 

· Each time you press  during a call, the call switches between hands-free ON/OFF.

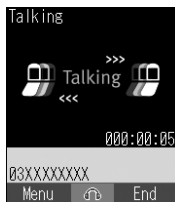
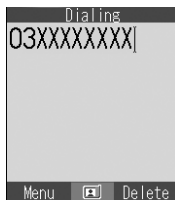
·  is displayed during hands-free operation and  is displayed during hands-free operation.

#### ■ To adjust the volume


Press 

### 3 To end the call, press or [Right]

· You can also end the call by folding the FOMA terminal.



## Function menu (phone number entry screen)

- While the **phone number entry screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.


Item	Description	
Notify caller ID	OFF	Sets whether to notify the other party of your caller ID. Does not notify the other party of your caller ID.
	ON	Notifies the other party of your caller ID.
	Cancel Prefix	Notifies your caller ID according to the setting in "Notify caller ID" (p.28).
Prefix numbers	Select the specific numbers as phone number prefixes. You can store the specific numbers in advance. →p.51	
Add to phonebook	Adds the dialed phone number to the phonebook. → p.42	
Compose SMS	Composes SMS from the dialed phone number and sends it. →p.92	
Voice dialing	Makes a voice call to the dialed phone number.	
V-phone dialing	Makes a videophone call to the dialed phone number. →p.38	

### NOTE



- It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30 cm from a FOMA terminal during hands-free operation. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30 cm, the other party may find it difficult to listen to you or voices may sound differently.

## When you make a mistake dialing a number



### ● To insert a number

Use  and move the cursor to the position where you want to insert the number. Then enter the number.

### ● To delete a number

Use  and put the cursor to the number to the right of the position where you want to delete the number and press  [Right].

### ● To reenter a number

Press  or press and hold  [Right] for 1 second or longer to return to the standby screen.

## Receiving a Call

### 1 A call comes in

The FOMA terminal rings, the incoming call lamp flashes, and the receiving screen appears. Unless the vibrator is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal also uses the vibration to notify you of the incoming call.

#### ■ To turn off a ring tone

Press [Left]

#### ■ To reject an incoming call

Press [Right]

### 2 Press or

The **in-call screen** is displayed, and you can talk.

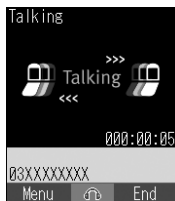
#### ■ To switch to hands-free operation during a call

Press

· Each time you press during a call, the call switches between hands-free ON/OFF.

#### ■ To adjust the volume

Press



### 3 To end the call, press or [Right]

#### Function menu (in-call screen)

- While the **phone number entry screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Hold/Talk	Puts the current call on hold.
Mute/Resume	Mutes your voice to the other party.
New call	Puts the current call on hold and makes another call. →p.120
Refer/Add to PB	Select from "Add to phonebook" and "Search phonebook". →p.42, 44
Own number	Displays own number. →p.28

## NOTE

- This FOMA terminal cannot put the unanswered call on hold (pressing while ringing ends the call).
- When you receive a call from a caller who withholds his/her caller ID, who is unable to provide the caller ID, or who dials from a pay phone, the caller's phone number is not displayed, but the reason for not providing ID is displayed.
- When the call is forwarded, the number forwarding the call and the number making the call are displayed. However, the number forwarding the call may not be displayed depending on the phone.

## <Public mode (Driving mode)>

## Using Public Mode (Driving Mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service specifically provided to ensure the appropriate manner of using the FOMA terminal in public spaces. When the FOMA terminal is set to Public mode, it sends a message to callers saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place (train, bus, theater, etc.) where you should refrain from talking on a phone, and then ends the call.

- Public mode can only be set or cancelled from the standby screen. (It can also be set or cancelled when the icon is displayed.)
- You can still make calls when the FOMA terminal is in Public mode.
- This function is not available during data communication.
- While the Caller ID Request is set to "Activate", receiving a call from an unidentified number plays the Caller ID Request announcement (not the Public mode announcement).

### 1 On the standby screen, press (1 second or longer)

Public mode is set and appears.

When a call is received, the message (in Japanese) saying "I can't answer the call because I'm driving or in a place where I should refrain from using a mobile phone. Please call back later" is sent to the caller.

· If the manner mode is set, public mode has priority.

#### ■ To cancel Public mode (Driving mode)

Press (1 second or longer)

Public mode (Driving mode) is canceled and disappears.

## NOTE

- The following tones do not sound in Public mode:
  - Ring tone for voice/videophone calls
  - Ring tone for mail/SMS
  - Ring tone for MessageR/MessageF
  - Schedule alarm tone
  - Alarm clock tone
  - Low-voltage alarm tone
  - Charge sound
  - Software ring tone for i-αppli

## If the Public mode (Driving mode) is set

In Public mode (Driving mode), your FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive a call. Calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.

- The voice caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you should refrain from using a mobile phone, and the call then ends.

## ● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (Driving mode) are set

If the FOMA terminal is set to Public mode while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode announcement.* <sup>1</sup>	Voice Mail service cannot be used for videophone calls. The call ends without being connected to the service center.
Call forwarding	Forwards the call after playing the Public mode announcement.* <sup>2</sup> * <sup>3</sup>	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode movie announcement.* <sup>4</sup>
Call waiting	Ends the call after playing the Public mode announcement.	Ends the call after playing the Public mode movie announcement.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Bar nuisance call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Callers from barred numbers hear a message saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends.</li><li>· Callers from other numbers hear a message of Public mode and the call then ends.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Callers from barred numbers see a movie announcement notifying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends.</li><li>· Callers from other numbers see the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.</li></ul>
Caller ID Request	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Callers who have not provided a caller ID hear a message requesting a caller ID and the call then ends.</li><li>· Callers who have provided a caller ID hear a message of Public mode and the call then ends.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· If the caller does not provide a caller ID, the FOMA terminal ends the call with the movie announcement asking the caller to provide a caller ID.</li><li>· If the caller provides a caller ID, the caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.</li></ul>

- \*1: If the ring time for Voice mail is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the Received calls record.
- \*2: If the ring time for Call forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode message is played. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the Received calls record.
- \*3: The call forwarding guidance message played to the caller depends on the Call forwarding setting. For the Call forwarding setting procedure, refer to "Network Service Operation Guide".
- \*4: Forwarded videophone calls are only connected if the forwarding number is a 3G-324M-compatible videophone. (3G-324M: An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones).

## Using Public Mode (Power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in public places. If you set the Public mode (power off) and then receive a call with the power turned off, the caller will hear an announcement that you are in a place where the power needs to be turned off (hospital, airplane, near a priority seat, etc.) and cannot answer the call, and then the call will end.

### 1 On the standby screen, press

The Public mode (power off) is set (no change is made on the standby screen).

After the Public mode (power off) is set and the power is turned off, if a call is received, the caller will hear an announcement that "I am now in a place where I need to turn off my phone, and cannot answer your call. Please call again later on".

#### ■ To release the Public mode (power off)

Press        

#### ■ To check the Public mode (power off) setting

Press        

### NOTE

- Turning on the power does not release the Public mode (power off). The setting will remain unchanged until you dial \*#25250\* to release the Public mode (power off).

### If the Public mode (power off) is set

The setting will remain unchanged until you dial \*#25250\* to release the Public mode (power off). Turning on the power does not release the setting.

The caller will hear the Public mode (power off) announcement when you are out of service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

- The voice caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are in a place where you need to turn off the power, and the call then ends.

### ● Receiving a call when network services and Public mode (power off) are set

If the FOMA terminal is set to Public mode (power off) while network services are activated, voice calls or videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.


Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement.	Voice mail service cannot be used for videophone calls. The call ends without being connected to the service center.
Call forwarding	Forwards the call after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement. <sup>*1</sup>	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement. <sup>*2</sup>
Bar nuisance call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Callers from barred numbers hear a message saying that the call has been rejected and the call then ends.</li> <li>Callers from other numbers hear the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Callers from barred numbers see a movie announcement notifying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends.</li> <li>Callers from other numbers see the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.</li> </ul>
Caller ID Request	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Callers who have not provided a caller ID hear a message requesting a caller ID and the call then ends.</li> <li>Callers who have provided a caller ID hear a message of Public mode (power off) and the call then ends.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the caller does not provide a caller ID, the FOMA terminal ends the call with the movie announcement asking the caller to provide a caller ID.</li> <li>If the caller provides a caller ID, the caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.</li> </ul>

\*1: The call forwarding guidance message played to the caller depends on the Call forwarding setting. For the Call forwarding setting procedure, refer to "Network Service Operation Guide".

\*2: Calls to videophones will not be connected unless the forwarding party has a videophone set to comply with 3G-324M. (3G-324M: An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones).

## Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can provide your phone number (caller ID) for the other party's phone (display) when you make a voice or videophone call. Since the caller ID is important information, take care when you notify your caller ID. There are three types of Caller ID Notification settings.

Function	Description
Notify caller ID	Sets whether your caller ID is provided or withheld when you make a call. → p.28
"186"/"184"	Uses the "186" and "184" prefixes to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call. <Example : To withhold your phone number> Dial "184" → Dial the other party's phone number → Press 
Notify caller ID	Uses function menu in the <b>phone number entry screen</b> to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.

### NOTE






- When you make a call overseas or receive a call from overseas, caller ID is not provided depending on the network condition.

### <WORLD CALL>

## Making International Calls

- For details of overseas use, refer to "Overseas Use" → p.131

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to "The Contact Information" provided on the back of the manual.

- 1 Dial the number in the following order:**  
009130 → 010 → Country code → Area code  
→ The other party's phone number
- 2 Press**   
The international call is made to the dialed number.  
 **To make an international videophone call**  
Press \*  \*
- 3 To end the call, press**  **or**  **[Right]**

### NOTE

- For information on the supported country and the supported overseas carriers for an international videophone call, refer to the DoCoMo website.

### <Redial>

## Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

- The redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers in total for voice calls and videophone calls.
- When the number of Redial calls record entries exceeds the maximum number, existing entries are overwritten starting with the oldest entry.
- If you repeatedly dial to the same phone number, the latest call will be recorded in the redial record.

## 1 On the standby screen, press

The **Redial list screen** appears.

- On the standby screen, you can also display the Redial list screen by pressing [Left] → "Phonebook" → "Call data" → "Redial"



## 2 Select the desired redial record

The **Redial details screen** appears.

## 3 Press

The call is made to the selected redial number.

## 4 To end the call, press or [Right]

### Function menu (Redial calls list/details screen)

- While the **Redial list/details screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description	
Notify caller ID**	Select whether to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	OFF	Does not notify the other party of your caller ID.
	ON	Notifies the other party of your caller ID.
	Cancel prefix	Notifies your caller ID according to the setting in "Notify caller ID" (p.28).
Prefix numbers**	Select the specific numbers as phone number prefixes. You can store the specific numbers in advance. → p.51	
Add to phonebook	Adds a phone number to the phonebook from the "Redial". → p.42	
V-phone dialing	Makes a videophone call to a phone number stored in the Redial. → p.38	

Item	Description
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail from the address stored in the Redial and sends it. → p.78
Compose SMS	Composes an SMS from the phone number stored in the Redial and sends it. → p.92
Delete	Deletes the selected redial record.
Delete all	Deletes all the redial records.

※ This function is available only for the redial details screen.

### Redial calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
(black)	Voice call	(black)	Videophone call

### <Received calls>

## Using the Received Calls Record

The received call number is stored in the Received calls record along with the date and time and the caller's name (if stored in the phonebook).

- The Received calls record stores up to 30 calls in total for voice calls and videophone calls.
- When the Received calls record is full, entries are deleted starting with the oldest entry.

## 1 On standby screen, press

The **Received calls list screen** appears.

- On the standby screen, you can also display the Received calls list screen by pressing [Left] → "Phonebook" → "Call data" → "Received calls".



## 2 Select the received call entry you want to check

The **Received calls details screen** appears.

On the details screen, the date and time, type of calls, call duration (ring time), caller's name and phone number are displayed.

## 3 Press


The call is made to the selected number of the received calls record.

## 4 To end the call, press or [Right]

### NOTE

- When you receive a call from a caller who withholds his/her caller ID, who is unable to provide the caller ID, or who dials from a pay phone, the reason for not providing ID is displayed.

### Function menu(Received calls list/detail screen)

- While the **Received calls list/details screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.





Item	Description	
Display all missed*1	Switches to the missed calls list screen from the received calls list screen.	
Notify caller ID*2	Select whether to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	OFF	Does not notify the other party of your caller ID.
	ON	Notifies the other party of your caller ID.
	Cancel prefix	Notifies your caller ID according to the setting in "Notify caller ID" (p.28).
Prefix numbers*2	Select the specific numbers as phone number prefixes. You can store the specific numbers in advance.→p.51	
Add to phonebook	Adds a phone number to the phonebook from the Received calls record.→p.42	

Item	Description
V-phone dialing	Makes a videophone call to a phone number stored in the Received calls record.→p.38
Compose message	Composes i-mode mail from the address stored in the the Received calls record and sends the mail.→p.78
Compose SMS	Composes SMS from the phone number stored in the Received calls record and sends it.→p.92
Delete	Deletes the selected received call record.
Delete all	Deletes all the received calls records.

\*1: This function is available only for the received calls list screen.

\*2: This function is available only for the received calls details screen.

### Received calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
 (green)	Voice call	 (green)	Videophone call
	Missed voice call		Missed videophone call

# Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

What is Videophone?.....	38
Videophone screen.....	38
Making a Videophone Call .....	38
Receiving a Videophone Call .....	39
Changing Videophone Call Settings.....	40

## What is Videophone?

You can use the videophone call function between terminals that support the DoCoMo videophone system.

● DoCoMo videophone conforms to "the 3G-324M※1 standard set down in the international 3GPP※2 standards". Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a videophone terminal that uses a different system from the DoCoMo videophone.

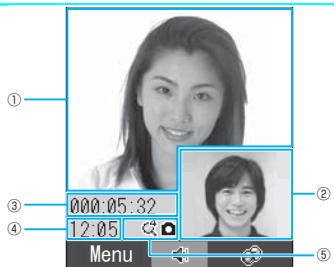
※1 : 3G-324M

An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones.

※2 : 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)

A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

## Videophone screen



① Main screen: At the time of purchase, shows the camera image from other party's phone.

② Sub-screen: At the time of purchase, shows the camera image from your phone.

③ Shows the call duration.

④ Shows the current time.

⑤ Shows the videophone function settings.

## Videophone call icons

- : Sent image by ×4 magnification
- : A camera image is being sent
- : Sent image by ×2 magnification
- : A substitutive image is being sent
- : Sent image by ×1 magnification
- : An image from the front camera is being sent
- : Hands-free OFF
- : Hands-free ON
- : An image from the rear camera is being sent

## Making a Videophone Call

### 1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

The **phone number entry screen** (p.30) appears.



### 2 Press

When the other party answers the call, the **videophone in-call screen** appears, and you can talk.

#### ■ To switch to hands-free operation during a call

Press

- Each time you press during a call, the call switches between hands-free ON/OFF.

#### ■ To enlarge/reduce the image currently being sent

Press

#### ■ To send video from the rear camera

Press [Right]

- Each time you press , the video switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
- When you switch cameras, it may take a few seconds.

#### ■ To switch between camera image and substitutive image

Press

- Each time you press , the sending image switches between the camera image and the substitutive image.


### 3 To end the call, press

## ● If a videophone call is not connected

If a videophone call was not connected, a message of the connection failure reason appears. However, in some circumstances, the message may not be displayed. Also, depending on the type of phone used by the called party and the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason given may not accurately reflect the other party's actual status.

Message	Reason
Check number then redial	You dialed a wrong number.
Busy	The called party is on another call.
Out of service area/power off	The called party is out of service area or his/her phone is turned off.
Public mode (Driving mode) Call again after a while	The called party is in Public mode.
Set caller ID to ON	Displayed when you connected without notifying your caller ID.
Redial using voice call	The called party sets the Voice Mail service or a call forward destination does not support videophone call.
Connection failed	This message is displayed in other situations than the above.

### Function menu(videophone number entry screen)

- While the **phone number entry screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description	
Notify caller ID	Select whether or not to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	OFF	Does not notify the other party of your caller ID.
	ON	Notifies the other party of your caller ID.
	Cancel Prefix	Notifies your caller ID according to the setting in "Notify caller ID" (p.28).

Item	Description
Prefix numbers	Select the specific numbers as phone number prefixes. You can store the specific numbers in advance. → p.51
Add to phonebook	Adds the dialed phone number to the phonebook. → p.42
Compose SMS	Composes an SMS from the dialed phone number and sends it. → p.92
Voice dialing	Makes a voice call to the dialed phone number. → p.30
V-phone dialing	Makes a videophone call to the dialed phone number.

## Receiving a Videophone Call

### 1 A videophone call comes in

The FOMA terminal rings, and the incoming call lamp flashes.



- To turn off a ring tone

Press  [Left]

- To reject an incoming call

Press  [Right]


### 2 Press or

Pressing  sends the camera image to the other party, and pressing  sends the substitutive image to the other party.

The **videophone in-call screen** appears, and you can talk.

- To switch to hands-free operation during a call

Press 

- Each time you press  during a call, the call switches between hands-free ON/OFF.

- To enlarge/reduce the image currently being sent

Press 



### To send video from the rear camera

Press [Right]

- Each time you press , the video switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
- When you switch cameras, it may take a few seconds.

### To switch between camera image and substitutive image

Press

- Each time you press , the sending image switches between the camera image and the substitutive image.

## 3 To end the call, press

### Function menu (videophone in-call screen)

- While the **videophone in-call screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description	
Disp. set V-phone	Sets what to display on the main screen.	
	Other image	Displays the camera image from the other party's phone on the main screen.
	Camera image	Displays the camera image from your phone on the main screen.
	Only other image	Displays only the camera image from the other party's phone on the videophone screen.
	Only camera image	Displays only the camera image from your phone on the videophone screen.
Image quality	Sets the priority sequence for image quality and motion of the image sent/received during a videophone call.	
	Standard	Sends/receives the image with standard quality and motion.
	Prefer img qual	Sends/receives more finely detailed image. Best for motionless subjects.
	Prefer motion spd	Sends/receives the image with smooth motion. Best for fast-moving subjects.

Item	Description
Color mode set	Select the image color from "Normal", "Sepia" and "Monochrome".
Front camera /Rear camera	Switches between front camera and rear camera to send the image. · When you switch cameras, it may take a few seconds.
Substitutiv image/ Camera image	Switches the sending image between camera image and substitutive image
Own number	Displays own number. → p.28

### NOTE

- International videophone calls can also be made using the DoCoMo "WORLD CALL" international dialing service. → p.34
- It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30 cm from a FOMA terminal during hands-free operation. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30 cm, the other party may find it difficult to listen to you or voices may sound differently.

## Changing Videophone Call Settings

You can set the functions related to videophone calls, such as what to display on the main screen, image quality, color mode, etc.

1 On the standby screen [Left] → (Settings) → "Video-phone"

2 Set the following items

Item	Description
Disp. set V-phone	"Function menu (videophone in-call screen)" → p.40
Image quality	
Color mode set	
Camera img sending	Specifies whether to send a camera image or a substitutive image when you make a videophone call.
Voice auto switch	Specifies whether to automatically switch to a voice call or return to the standby screen when a videophone call fails to connect.

# Using the Phonebook

Phonebooks of the FOMA Terminal.....	42
Adding Information to the Phonebook..... <Add to phonebook>	42
Searching the Phonebook..... <Search phonebook>	44
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status..... <No. of phonebook>	45
Renaming Groups..... <Group setting>	45
Storing Your Personal Data..... <Own number>	45
Using Dialing Shortcuts .....	<Quick dialing>46

## Phonebooks of the FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The table below shows the data storage capabilities.

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM (FOMA card) phonebook
No. of entries	Up to 500 entries	Up to 50 entries
Groups	Groups 0 to 19	Groups 0 to 10
Phone number	Up to 3 numbers per entry 7 category icons available	1 number per entry No category icons
E-mail address	Up to 3 addresses per entry 3 category icons available	1 address per entry No category icons
Image	One still image per entry	Unable to assign
Memory No.	001 to 500	001 to 050
Other data	One contact's name, reading, and call rejection setting per entry	One contact's name and reading per entry

### ● Displaying names

Storing the phone number and e-mail address in the phonebook will display the other party's name when:


- You make/receive the call.
- During the call.
- The list/detail screen of the redial records or received calls is displayed.
- The list/detail screen of the i-mode mail or SMS is displayed.



### ● Displaying images







Resistering a still image in the phonebook will display the image when you receive the call.

<Add to phonebook>

## Adding Information to the Phonebook

- 1 On the standby screen  → "Add to phonebook"**
- 2 "Phone"/"UIM" → Enter a name**  
A name can contain up to 16 full-pitch, 32 half-pitch in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook, and 10 full-pitch, 21 half-pitch in the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.
- 3 Check the reading**  
Correct the reading if the reading is incorrect.  
A reading can contain up to 32 half-pitch in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook, and 12 full-pitch, 25 half-pitch in the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.
- 4 Set the respective parameters**

Item	Description
 Phone number	Enter a phone number and select a category icon. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· A phone number can be up to 26 digits in the Phone phonebook.</li><li>· A phone number can be up to 20 digits in the blue UIM phonebook and 26 digits in the green UIM phonebook.</li><li>· No category icon in the UIM phonebook. Once you have stored the phone number, the category icon  appears on the phonebook.</li></ul>

Item	Description
 E-mail address	<p>Enter an e-mail address and select a category icon.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An e-mail address can be up to 50 digits both in the Phone phonebook and UIM phonebook respectively.</li> <li>No category icon in the UIM phonebook. Once you have stored the e-mail address, the category icon  appears on the phonebook.</li> <li>When you store an e-mail address with the secret code (a 4-digit number), add his/her secret code as follows: "phone number xxxx" or "[phone number xxxx @docomo.ne.jp]" ("xxxx" indicates the secret code).</li> </ul>
 Group name	<p>Select a group number between "0" and "19" in the Phone phonebook, and "0" and "10" in the UIM phonebook.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 0.</li> </ul>
 Image**	<p>Select a still image displayed when you receive a call. Select a folder→Select an image</p>
 Call rejection**	<p>Specifies whether to reject a call from the contact in the list.</p>
 Memory number	<p>Enter a memory number between "001" to "500" in the Phone phonebook, and "001" and "050" in the UIM phonebook.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If no memory number is specified, the least of available numbers is assigned.</li> </ul>

\*\* The option cannot be set in the UIM phonebook.

5  [Left]

## NOTE

- If you delete the original data of an image that is stored in the phonebook, the data stored in the phonebook is also deleted.
- The settings of the image stored in the phonebook will be enabled when the "Disp phonebook img" in the settings menu is set to "ON". →p.48
- The "Call rejection" setting of each phonebook entry will be enabled when the "Call rejection" in the phonebook menu is set to "ON". →p.58

## Important

- It is recommended to note down the information in the phonebook separately. If you own a PC, the Data Link Software (p.157) and FOMA USB Cable (optional) are available to back up the phonebook data onto your PC.
- Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, change or other handling of the FOMA terminal. If you wish to copy the data for each phonebook entry onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility such as a DoCoMo shop, it may not be possible to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal depending on the specifications of the new model.

**Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries.**

## Searching the Phonebook

1 On the standby screen → "Search phonebook"

2 Select a search method from the list below and search

When the search ends, the **phonebook list screen** that meets the search criterion appears. \*\* appears for the Phone phonebook entries and \*\* appears for the UIM phonebook entries.



Item	Description
Reading search* <sup>1</sup>	Enter a part of the reading → · You do not need to enter the entire reading to search.
Name search* <sup>1</sup>	Enter a part of the name → · You do not need to enter the entire name to search.
Phone No. search* <sup>1</sup>	Enter a part of the phone number → · You do not need to enter the entire phone number to search.
Group search	Select a group →
Memory No. (Phone)* <sup>1</sup>	Enter a 3-digit memory number →
Memory No. (UIM)* <sup>1</sup>	
Column search* <sup>2</sup>	Select a column you want to search →

\*<sup>1</sup> : If you want to display the list of all the entries stored in the phonebook, press without entering any search criteria.

\*<sup>2</sup> : If you want to display the list of all the entries stored in the phonebook, select "All".

3 Select the phonebook you want to check

The **phonebook detail screen** appears.

To make a call from the phonebook list screen

Select a phonebook →

If the selected phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first number

4 Check the phonebook details

To make a voice call from the phonebook detail screen

Select a phone number →

To make a videophone call from the phonebook detail screen


Select a phone number →

### Function menu (phonebook list screen)

● While the **phonebook screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Add to phonebook	Adds information to the Phone phonebook or the UIM phonebook.
Copy to UIM/ Copy to phone	Copies to the UIM phonebook if the Phone phonebook entry is highlighted, or copies to the Phone phonebook, if the UIM phonebook entry is highlighted.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted phonebook entry.
Copy selected	Copies multiple phonebook entries. Copies to the UIM phonebook if the Phone phonebook entry is selected, or copies to the Phone phonebook, if the UIM phonebook entry is selected. Select entries →  [Left]
Delete selected	Deletes the selected phonebook entries. Select the phonebook entries you want to delete →  [Left]
Delete all	Deletes all the phonebook entries in the Phone phonebook and UIM phonebook. Enter your security code


## Function menu (phonebook detail screen)

- While the **phonebook detail screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description	
Notify caller ID	Select whether or not to notify the other party of your caller ID.	
	OFF	Does not notify the other party.
	ON	Notifies the other party.
	Cancel prefix	Notifies the other party of your caller ID according to the "Notify caller ID" (p.28) setting
Prefix numbers	Select the specific numbers to add to the phone number. The specific numbers can be stored in advance. → p.51	
Edit data	Edit phonebook entries.	
Delete data	Deletes phonebook entries.	
	Phone number/ mail address/ image	Deletes the selected phone number/e-mail address/image.
	This phonebook	Deletes the displayed phonebook entry on the detail screen.
Compose message	Composes and sends i-mode mail to the highlighted mail address. → p.78	
Compose SMS	Composes and sends SMS to the highlighted phone number. → p.92	
Copy to UIM/ Copy to phone	Select "Copy to UIM" if the Phone phonebook entry is displayed in detail, and selects "Copy to phone" if the UIM phonebook entry is displayed in detail.	



## <No. of phonebook>

# Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

- 1 On the standby screen  → "No. of phonebook"  
Each number of entries, available (Free) and stored (Used) on the UIM (phonebook stored on the FOMA card (UIM)) and the Phone (phonebook stored on the FOMA terminal) appears respectively.

## <Group setting>


# Renaming Groups




- You cannot rename the group name of "Group 0".
- 1 On the standby screen  → "Group setting"
  - 2 Select a group → Enter a group name
    - To reset group names to default settings  
Select a group →  [Left] → "Reset group name"

## Storing Your Personal Data

You can register your personal data (name, reading and e-mail address).



**1** On the standby screen  → "Own number"



**2**  [Left] → Enter your security code  
→ Set the following items

Item	Description
 Name	Enter your name.
 Reading	Enter the reading of the name. · Entering your name does not set the reading automatically.
 Mail address	Enter an e-mail address.

**3**  [Left]

## Using Dialing Shortcuts

By assigning memory numbers "002" to "009" to phone numbers in the Phone phonebook, you can quickly make a voice call to those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys  to  for 1 second or longer.



**1** On the standby screen, hold down  to   
for 1 second or longer

# Settings





Setting the Ring Tone.....	<Incoming/Volume>	48
Setting the Date and Time.....	<Clock>	49
Setting Manner mode.....	<Manner mode>	49
Changing the manner mode.....		49
Setting the Original manner mode.....		49
Setting the Display and Light.....	<Display>	50
Setting Talk Functions.....	<Talk>	51
Setting Lock/Security.....	<Lock/Security>	51
Setting Network Functions.....	<Connection setting>	52
Setting Videophone.....	<Video-phone>	52
Setting Other Functions.....	<Other settings>	52
















## Setting the Ring Tone

You can set the incoming call related functions such as ring tone, its volume and vibration pattern.

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Incoming/Volume"

2 Set the following items

Item	Description	
Volume	Sets ring volume, message ring volume, voice volume and keypad volume. Select the item to set the volume →  → 	
Ring tone	Sets the ring tones for voice calls, videophone calls, mail, SMS (Short Message), MessageR and MessageF. · Press  [Left] to replay the ring tone while selecting the ring tone.	
Set ringing time	Sets the incoming call indication when the caller is not listed in the phonebook.	
	Mute seconds	Sets the time for which the ring tone is muted before starting up. Enter in seconds → 
	Missed call disp.	Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the Missed calls record.
Vibrator	Sets a vibrating pattern for incoming voice calls, videophone calls, mail, SMS, MessageR and MessageF. · When you select a vibration pattern, the FOMA terminal vibrates in that pattern.	
Disp phonebook img	Sets whether to display the image of the caller listed in the phonebook.	

Item	Description	
Answer setting	Sets the functions that enable you to answer a call immediately.	
	Any key answer	You can answer an incoming voice call by pressing not only  , but also  ,  to  ,  ,  and  keys. · This function is not available for videophone calls.
	Quick silent	You can stop the ring tone and vibration of an incoming call by pressing  ,  to  ,  ,  and  keys. · Even if you stop the ring tone and vibration, the ringing continues.
OFF	You can answer an incoming call only by pressing  or  .	

### NOTE



- If you set "Vibrator", take care that the ring tone vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.










### List of pre-installed ring tones and melodies

- Melody 1
- Melody 2
- Melody 3
- Melody 4
- Melody 5
- Alarm 1
- Alarm 2
- Alarm 3
- Alarm 4

## Setting the Date and Time

You can set the clock related functions such as date, time and the clock display pattern.

- 1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Clock"
- 2 Set the following items


Item	Description
Clock setting	Sets the current time. When "Time format" is set to "12 h"  to select time (12 hours)/minute/AM or PM and  to select the number →  When "Time format" is set to "24 h"  to select time (24 hours)/minute and  to select the number → 
Date setting	Sets the current date.  to select the year/month/day and  to select the number → 
Time format	Sets whether to display the time in 12 or 24 hours.
Clock display	Sets whether to display the clock on the standby screen or not.


### NOTE

- If you do not set the time correctly, you cannot set the automatic start of i-Appli and cannot download the i-motion with restrictions on the play count or period.
- The FOMA terminal is equipped with a built-in backup battery. The backup battery retains the date and time, which means that they are not reset even when the battery is exchanged. However, they may be erased if the battery pack is not inserted for about two weeks. In such a case, charge the battery, and then set the date and time again. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.



## Setting Manner mode

You can change the manner mode type or set details for the original manner mode.

Pressing  (Manner) on the standby screen more than one second will set the manner mode selected in this feature.



- You can also switch the manner mode on or off by pressing  for more than one second during voice call or videophone call.



### Selecting the manner mode


- 1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Manner mode"
- 2 "Manner mode set" → Select any item

Item	Description
Manner mode	Mutes all tones played through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
Original 1	These options allow you to tailor the Manner mode settings to your own preferences.
Original 2	

### Setting the Original manner mode

- 1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Manner mode"
- 2 "Original" → "Original 1"/"Original 2"  
→ Set the following items

Item	Description
Volume	Sets the ring tone volume, keypad volume, voice volume, mail volume and alarm volume during manner mode. Select the item to set the volume →  → 

Item	Description
Ring tone	Sets the ring tone for incoming calls, videophone calls, mail, SMS (Short Message), MessageR and MessageF during manner mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  [Left] to replay the ring tone while selecting the ring tone.</li> </ul>
Vibrator	Sets a vibrating pattern for incoming voice calls, videophone calls, mail, SMS (Short Message), MessageR and MessageF during original manner mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you select a vibration pattern, the FOMA terminal vibrates in that pattern.</li> </ul>
Mic sensitive	Selects the microphone sensitivity from "Normal" and "Up" during original manner mode.
LVA tone	Sets whether to sound the low voltage alarm tone during original manner mode.

## NOTE

- If you set the manner mode to use vibration, take care that the ring tone vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.


<Display>

## Setting the Display and Light

From this feature you can set the display/light related functions such as the standby screen image, color pattern and brightness of lighting.

**1** On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings)  
 → "Display"

**2** Set the following items

Item	Description
Wake-up display	Select the image or message displayed when the FOMA terminal is turned on from "OFF", "Message" and "Built-in message". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you select "Message", press  [Left] and enter a message.</li> </ul>

Item	Description	
Stand-by display	Sets the image for the standby screen.	
	Calendar	Sets whether to display the calendar with the selected image as the background on the standby screen.
	My picture	Selects from the images pre-installed, downloaded i-mode site, etc., or shot by the camera in the FOMA terminal from "My picture" (p.102).
Color pattern	Select the screen color pattern from "Gray", "White" and "Red". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you select a color pattern, the screen is displayed in that pattern.</li> </ul>	
Power save mode	Sets the screen brightness and the time to start the power save mode.	
	Display light	Select the screen brightness from "Level 3" to "Level 1".
	Light time	Select the time before the power save mode is started from "5 seconds", "10 seconds", "20 seconds", "40 seconds", "60 seconds" and "All time ON". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you select "All time ON", the power save mode does not start.</li> </ul>
Select language (バイリンガル)	Switches the display language of each function name or message to Japanese or English. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you have the FOMA card (UIM) inserted, the setting of "Select language" is stored in the FOMA card (UIM).</li> <li>When you switch from Japanese to English, select "English", and when you switch from English to Japanese, select "日本語".</li> </ul>	

## NOTE






- If you set an image larger than the standby screen size (178 × 180 dots) as the standby, the whole image is displayed after size reduction without changing the dimension ratio. If the set image is smaller than the standby screen, it will appear in its actual size.

## Setting Talk Functions

You can set the talk related functions such as automatic redial, specifying certain numbers and displaying the call duration.

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Talk"

2 Set the following items

Item	Description				
Automatic redial	Sets whether to redial a number automatically when a call was not answered. · When "ON", the FOMA terminal automatically redials the number up to seven times.				
Prefix setting	Sets a specific number to add before a telephone number (prefix). <a href="#">Setting a new prefix</a> Highlight "<Not stored>" →  [Left] → Select "Edit" → Enter a name → Enter a number <a href="#">Editing a prefix</a> Select the item to edit →  [Left] → Select "Edit" → Edit the name or/and number →  [Left] <a href="#">Deleting a prefix</a> Select the item to delete →  [Left] → "Delete" <a href="#">Deleting all the prefixes</a>  [Left] → "Delete all" → Enter your security code				
Call data	Displays and resets the calling time.				
	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Call durations</td> <td>Displays the call duration of the last call and the total duration of calls made since the last reset.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reset duration</td> <td>Resets the total call duration. Enter your security code → "YES"</td> </tr> </table>	Call durations	Displays the call duration of the last call and the total duration of calls made since the last reset.	Reset duration	Resets the total call duration. Enter your security code → "YES"
Call durations	Displays the call duration of the last call and the total duration of calls made since the last reset.				
Reset duration	Resets the total call duration. Enter your security code → "YES"				

### NOTE

- Displayed time in "Call durations" is an approximate and it may differ from the actual figures.

## Setting Lock/Security

You can set the security related function such as locking the FOMA terminal and changing the security code.



1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Lock/Security"





2 Set the following items

Item	Description
All lock	"Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal" → p.58
PIN setting	"Changing PIN Code" → p.57
CHG security code	"Changing Your Security Code" → p.57

## Setting Network Functions

You can set the network related functions such as the search method of operators within the network and priority setting of operators.



- 1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Connection setting"
- 2 Set the following items

Item	Description
NW search mode	"Settings Related to Overseas Use" → p.137
Network re-search	
PLMN setting	
Network switch	
Operator name disp	
Host selection※	Sets other providers as the host connection when you require service other than i-mode. <a href="#">Registering a connection</a> Select "<Not stored>" →  [Left] → Enter your security code → Select "Edit" → Enter "Title", "Host name" and "Host address" →  [Left] <a href="#">Deleting a connection</a> Select the connection to delete →  [Left] → Enter your security code → "Delete" <a href="#">Deleting all the connections</a>  [Left] → Enter your security code → "Delete all"

※: Normally this setting requires no change.

## Setting Videophone



You can set the videophone related functions such as the display contents of the main screen, image quality and color mode.

- 1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Video-phone"
- 2 Set the following items

Item	Description
Disp. set V-phone	"Function menu (videophone in-call screen)" → p.40
Image quality	
Color mode set	
Camera img sending	"Changing Videophone Call Settings" → p.40
Voice auto switch	

## Setting Other Functions

You can set various other functions such as receiving a call while an earphone/microphone is connected, text entry and incoming call flashing mode.

- 1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Other settings"
- 2 Set the following items

Item	Description
Automatic answer	Sets whether to automatically answer an incoming voice call while an earphone/microphone is connected to the FOMA terminal.
Side key guard	Sets whether to cancel operation of side keys while the FOMA terminal is folded.

Item	Description	
Charge sound	Sets whether to sound an alarm when starting or completing to charge.	
CHR input method	Sets the method to use the input text.	
	Prediction	Sets whether to display the predicted candidates when you input text.
	Clear learned	Returns the learnt text in the FOMA terminal to the default setting.
Illumination	Sets the incoming call lamp flashing mode while receiving calls.	
	Illumination	Sets the color and flashing pattern for incoming call lamp, while receiving voice call, videophone call, mail, SMS (Short Message), MessageR and MessageF.
	Illumination talk	Sets the flashing color during voice call and videophone call.
Reset	Resets the function settings to the default settings at the time of purchase. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· For the functions that are reset, refer to "Menu Function List" (p.142).</li> </ul>	
Initialize	Deletes all stored data and returns the settings for the functions to their default settings at the time of purchase. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Ensure that the battery is fully charged before initializing the FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to initialize the FOMA terminal if the battery is low.</li> <li>· Do not turn the FOMA terminal off while it is being initialized.</li> </ul>	

"Initialize" deletes all of your important data including phonebook, mail, downloaded images or melodies, i-apply software, still images and movies shot with the built-in camera (even protected data).

## NOTE

- There will be no alarm for the start/completion of charging in the following cases, despite the Charge sound setting:
  - When a screen other than the standby screen is displayed
  - While in Public mode
  - While in Manner mode
  - When the phone is turned off
  - When the Ring volume is set to Level 0

**【MEMO】**

# Security Settings

Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal.....	56
Changing Your Security Code .....	<CHG security code>57
Changing PIN Code .....	<PIN setting>57
Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal.....	<All lock>58
Preventing Unwanted Mail Display.....	<Mail security>58
Enabling Call Rejection.....	<Call rejection>58

## Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal


Some functions in the FOMA terminal require a security code to make is useful. The code includes the ones for various operations, network security code for network service, i-mode password, etc. Make full use of your FOMA terminal by setting each code according to your purpose.

### ■ Notes on using security codes

- It is recommended not to use a number that another person easily finds out such as "a date of birth", "a part of a phone number", "an address number or a room number", "1111" and "1234" as a security code. Also, keep a separate record of the security code, for example, in order not to forget.
- Please prevent another person from knowing your security code. If by any chance the security code is known and abused, NTT DoCoMo is not liable for any loss or damage.
- NTT DoCoMo never asks you your security code.
- If you forget your security code, you need to take a form of identification proving that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license), the FOMA terminal and your current FOMA card (UIM) to an NTT DoCoMo shop service counter.  
For more information, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover.

### ● Security code

At the time of purchase, your security code is set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security code. →p.57

When the security code entry screen appears, enter a 4-to-8-digit security code, and press .

- The entered security code is shown in "\*" on the display, and the actual numbers are not shown.
- If you enter your security code incorrectly, a warning tone sounds and a warning message appears. If this is the case, make sure the correct security code and enter the code again.



### ● Network security code

The security code is a 4-digit number that you specify when you apply to use DoCoMo e-site or use various network services. You can change your security code.

If you have "My DoCoMo ID/Password" for "My DoCoMo" a total support website for PC access, you can apply for change to a new network security code from a PC.



From i-mode, you can also apply for change to a new network security code using "各種手続き" in "DoCoMo e-site".

※: See the back cover of this manual for more information about "My DoCoMo" and "DoCoMo e-site".

### ● i-mode password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregister sites in My Menu and to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or paid i-mode sites. (Some other passwords are set independently by your information service providers.)

When you first subscribe, i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your password.

If you change your password from i-mode, select "iMenu" → "English" →  "Options" →  "Change i-mode Password"

### ● PIN1 code and PIN2 code

Two pin numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to the FOMA card (UIM).

When you first subscribe, these security codes are set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security codes.

PIN1 code is a 4-to-8-digit number (code) that you enter when inserting the FOMA card (UIM) into your FOMA terminal or turning the FOMA terminal on. This code identifies you as the user to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. Entering the PIN1 code will enable the phone operations including sending/receiving calls.

PIN2 code is a 4-to-8-digit security code that you enter when using or requesting user certificates, etc.

※: This FOMA terminal does not have functions to require PIN2 code.

- When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card (UIM), use the PIN1/PIN2 code you set to the current card.

When the PIN1 code or PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter a 4-to-8-digit PIN1/PIN2 code, and press **[OK]**.

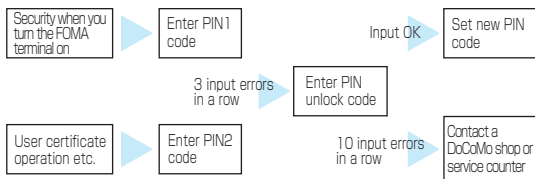
- The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is shown in "★" on the display, and the actual numbers are not shown.
- If you enter your PIN1/PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times, PIN1/PIN2 code is locked and you are unable to use the code (the remaining number of times in which you can enter the code is displayed as "Rest:3 times" on the display). The remaining number of times returns to 3 times by entering the correct code.



### ● PUK code

The PUK code is an 8 digit number that unlocks the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code. You cannot change the PUK code.

- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is locked.



## <CHG security code>

### Changing Your Security Code

- 1 On the standby screen **[Left]** → **[Settings]** → "Lock/Security"
- 2 "CHG security code" → Enter your security code → Enter a new security code → Enter the new security code again

## <PIN setting>

### Changing PIN Code

- PIN settings are stored on the FOMA card (UIM). When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card (UIM), use the PIN codes you set to the current card.
- If you enter your PIN1/PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in total, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use the PIN code. Make a note of your codes in case you forget them.

- 1 On the standby screen **[Left]** → **[Settings]** → "Lock/Security"
- 2 "PIN setting" → Select any item

Item	Description
Change PIN1 code*	Changes the current PIN1/PIN2 codes. Enter your security code → Enter PIN1/PIN2 code → Enter a new PIN1/PIN2 code → Enter the new PIN1/PIN2 code again
Change PIN2 code	
PIN1 code entry	Sets whether or not to enter PIN1 code when you turn the FOMA terminal on. · When set to "ON", the PIN1 code entry screen appears when you turn the FOMA terminal on. If you enter your PIN1 code, the standby screen will appear.

\*: When you change the PIN1 code, set the "PIN1 code entry" to "ON" in advance.

## ● Releasing PIN lock

If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in total, a message appears notifying you that the respective PIN1 or PIN2 code has been locked, and when PIN lock is set, the PUK code entry screen then appears. If this occurs, you must enter the 8-digit PUK code and unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code and then set a new PIN1 or PIN2 code.

- For your PUK code, refer to the FOMA terminal contract (customer copy) that you received when you subscribed to the FOMA terminal. If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in total, your FOMA card (UIM) is then completely locked. Keep your FOMA contract (customer copy) in a safe place to ensure that you do not lose it.
- If you forget your PUK code and your FOMA terminal is completely locked, you need to take your FOMA terminal, current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it unlocked.

### <All lock>

## Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal

Lock your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using it.

- While All lock is set, none of the functions can be used except for:
  - Turning the FOMA terminal on/off
  - Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118)

**1** On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Lock/Security"

**2** "All lock" → Enter your security code

The FOMA terminal is locked, and "All lock is set" message appears on the screen.

### ■ To release All lock



Enter your security code

- If you fail to release All lock 5 times in a row, the FOMA terminal is turned off. Turn on the FOMA terminal again and enter the correct security code.

### <Mail security>

## Preventing Unwanted Mail Display

This function enables you to apply security measures to your Inbox, Outbox, or Draft so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your approval. Mailboxes with security set cannot be opened unless the security code is entered.


- 1** On the standby screen  [Right] → "Mail settings"
- 2** "Display settings" → "Mail security"
- 3**  → Enter your security code → "OK"
- 4** Select the mailbox to set security → "OK"

### <Call rejection>

## Enabling Call Rejection

Enable the "Call rejection" settings stored in each phonebook. This function enables you to reject the calls from the phone numbers specified on Call rejection.

- For details on the "Call rejection" settings in the phonebook, refer to "Adding Information to the phonebook" (p.42).

- 1** On the standby screen  → "Call rejection"
- 2** Enter your security code
- 3** "ON"

### ■ To inactivate the call rejection setting

Select "OFF"

# Camera


Before Using the Camera.....	60
Shooting Still Images..... <Photo mode>	61
Shooting Movies ..... <Movie mode>	63

## Before Using the Camera

You can use the built-in camera on the FOMA terminal to shoot still images and movies.

### Using the camera

- Shooting Still Images → p.61
- Shooting Movies → p.63

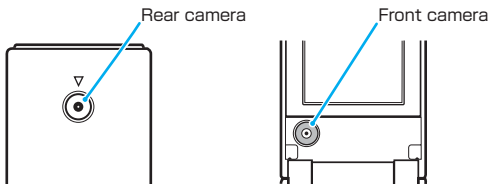
To switch between the front camera and the rear camera, press  [Left] on the shooting screen, then select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu.

### Rear camera

This camera is useful for taking pictures of other people, animals or scenery. What you see is what you get on the screen (Normal display: photographed as it appears on the screen).

### Front camera

This camera is useful for taking a picture of yourself. The image appears as if you were looking in the mirror (Mirror display: photographed as the mirror image of the displayed image).



- Using the CMOS camera, this camera is developed based on the extremely high-precision technology. However, the shots may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Random color stains may also appear on the photographed images particularly when shooting in very poorly lit locations.
- Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens may prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press on the lens when folding the FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause malfunction.

- Image quality may be adversely affected if the FOMA terminal is left in a warm location for a long time.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long time or shoot directly the sun or a powerful lamp. Doing so may lead to the discoloration of the photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.


### Notes on using the camera

#### Notes on shooting

- The color and brightness in still images or movies shot with the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual object.
- Note that shooting directly the sun or a powerful lamp may lead to the photographed images looking dark or blurred.
- Take care that your fingers, hair, or the camera strap do not cover the lens when shooting.
- Shooting an image or movie uses a large amount of battery. It is recommended that you turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot when the battery is low.
- Even if the FOMA terminal is in "Manner mode" or in "Public mode", the FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound and auto timer tone. You cannot change the volume of the shutter sound and auto timer tone.
- Moving the FOMA terminal while shooting could blur the image. Hold the FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not move, or use the auto timer.

#### Copyright Information

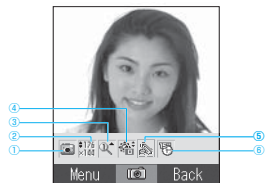
- Take care not to infringe on the copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded with the FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe on the portrait rights by using or altering another person's portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.

 Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens display the icons of the camera settings.

Photo mode shooting



① Indicates the camera mode.

- :Photo mode
- :Movie mode (Local playback) \*
- :Movie mode (Restricted(Mail)) \*

\*:You can set the file size in "File size setting" (p.63).

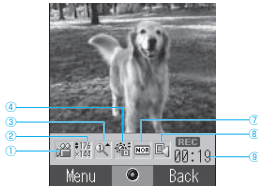
② Indicates the image size for shooting.

- (In Photo mode)
- :VGA (640 × 480)
- :CIF (352 × 288)
- :Stand-by (176 × 180)
- :Mail(L) (176 × 144)
- :Mail(S) (128 × 96)
- (In Movie mode)
- : Large (176 × 144)
- : Small (128 × 96)

③ Indicates the zoom setting.

- :x 1
- :x 2
- :x 4

Movie mode shooting



④ / / :

Indicates the brightness of the image.

⑤ Indicates "Storage setting".

- :Unrestricted
- :Restricted (Large)
- :Restricted (Small)

⑥ Indicates CHG camera-mode setting

- / :Continuous mode
- :Auto timer

⑦ Indicates the "Storage setting".

- :Normal
- :Fine mode
- :Long dur. mode
- ⑧ Indicates the "Movie type set".
- :Normal
- :Video
- :Voice

⑨ Displays the time elapsed after starting the shooting as "minute : second".

<Photo mode>

## Shooting Still Images

1 On the standby screen

○ [Left] → (Camera)

→ "Photo mode"

The Photo mode screen appears. The incoming call lamp lights in blue while the photo mode screen appears.

■ To adjust the brightness

Use to adjust the brightness

■ To use the zoom

Use to adjust the zoom



2 Point the camera at the object → or [[]]

The incoming call lamp lights in red while shooting. The camera shoots an image, and the image checking screen appears.

■ To retake the shot

○ [Right] → "YES"

■ To compose an i-mode mail with the still image attached

○ [Left] → Compose an i-mode mail  
"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.78

3 The file name of the image is displayed, and you can edit the title.

4 The image is saved in the Camera folder under "My picture".

## Function menu (Photo mode screen)

- While the **Photo mode screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description	
Front camera /Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera. →p.60	
Movie mode	Changes to the Movie mode.	
Select size	Select the image size from VGA (640 × 480), CIF (352 × 288), Stand-by (176 × 180), Mail (L)(176 × 144) and Mail (S)(128 × 96).	
Storage setting	Sets the file size for shooting a still image.	
	Unrestricted	Shoots without restrictions on the file size.
	Restricted (Large)	Shoots up to 100K bytes as the file size.
	Restricted (Small)	Shoots up to 9K bytes as the file size. · This option cannot be selected when the image size is VGA (640 × 480) or CIF (352 × 288).
White balance	Adjusts the colors according to the light.	
	Auto	Automatically corrects the color.
	Fine	Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
	Cloudy	Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
	Light bulb	Is the mode suitable for shooting under the incandescent lamp.
Color mode set	Sets the effects on the photographed images.	
	Normal	Shoots with the typical color settings.
	Sepia	Shoots a sepia-tone image.
	Mono-chrome	Shoots a black-and-white (monochrome) image.

Item	Description	
Brightness	Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from "-2" to "+2".	
CHG camera-mode	Shoots the continuous images or uses the auto timer.	
	Photo mode	Returns to the Photo mode screen.
	Continuous mode	Shoots still images continuously. Set the number of shots.
	Auto timer	Shoots in the auto timer. Select the time for the auto timer.
Zoom	Select the zoom setting for shooting. · The zoom setting cannot be changed when the image size is VGA (640 × 480) or CIF (352 × 288). · "×4" cannot be selected when the image size is Stand-by (176 × 180).	
Select frame	Select the frame to add to the shot. To check the selected frame Highlight the frame →  [Left] To cancel the framed photography Select "OFF" · Frame cannot be selected when the image size is VGA (640 × 480) or when the camera mode is in Continuous mode.	
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. To check the shutter sound Highlight the shutter sound →  [Left]	

## Shooting Movies

Use the built-in camera to shoot a movie with voice.

### 1 On the standby screen

○ [Left] →  (Camera)

→ "Movie mode"

The **Movie mode screen** appears.  
The incoming call lamp lights in blue while the movie mode screen appears.

#### ■ To adjust the brightness

Use  to adjust the brightness

#### ■ To use the zoom

Use  to adjust the zoom



### 2 Point the camera at the object → or

The incoming call lamp lights in red, and the shooting starts.  
If the file size reaches the limit specified in the File size setting, the shooting automatically terminates.

### 3 or

The shooting terminates and the **Movie checking screen** appears.

#### ■ To play the movie you shot

○ [Left] → "Play"

#### ■ To retake the shot

○ [Right] → "YES"

#### ■ To compose an i-mode mail with the movie attached

○ [Left] → Compose an i-mode mail

"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → p.78


### 4

The file name of the movie is displayed, and you can edit the title.

### 5

The movie is saved in the Camera folder under "i-motion".


## Function menu (Movie mode screen)

- While the **Movie mode screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description	
Front camera /Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera. → p.60	
Photo mode	Changes to the Photo mode.	
Select size	Select the image size for shooting a movie from Large (176 × 144) or Small (128 × 96).	
File size setting	Restricted (Mail)	Shoots up to 95K bytes as the file size.
	Local playback	Shoots up to 500K bytes as the file size.
Storage setting	Sets the image quality and duration for the movie shooting.	
	Normal	Shoots a movie in the typical image quality and duration.
	Fine mode	Shoots a movie with image quality higher. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
Long dur. mode	Shoots a long movie. The image quality is not as high as for Normal. · The shooting time varies by the conditions such as the object's movement or the brightness.	
White balance	Adjusts the colors according to the light.	
	Auto	Automatically corrects the color.
	Fine	Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
	Cloudy	Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
Light bulb	Is the mode suitable for shooting under the incandescent lamp.	

Item	Description	
Brightness	Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from "-2" to "+2".	
Zoom	Select the zoom setting for shooting.	
Movie type set	Normal	Records video and voice.
	Video	Shoots a movie without any voices.
	Voice	Records a voice without movies.

### Function menu (movie checking screen)

- While the **Movie checking screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Play	Plays the movie you shot.
Save	Saves the movie in the Camera folder under "i-motion".
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the movie attached. → p.78

### NOTE

- Note that if you press any keys to perform a function during the shooting, the sound may be recorded.

# i-mode

<b>What is i-mode?</b> .....	<b>66</b>
<b>Viewing Sites/Websites</b> .....	<b>67</b>
Viewing sites.....	67
Viewing websites.....	68
Adding bookmarks.....	69
Saving site content.....	70
Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions.....	71
<b>Downloading Data from Sites</b> .....	<b>72</b>
<b>Using Message Service Functions &lt;Message R/Message F&gt;</b>	<b>73</b>
Viewing messages.....	73
Checking for messages.....	75
<b>Specifying Your i-mode Settings</b> ..... <i-mode settings>	<b>76</b>

## What is i-mode?

The i-mode service enables you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail and connection to the Internet and i-mode sites (programs).

### ■ Site (program) connection

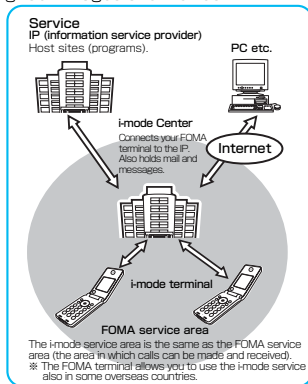
This service enables you to access a range of online services provided by your IP (information service provider), such as weather reports and news bulletins, simply by selecting them from the i-mode menu listings. You can also use this service to download and use games and standby screen images.

### ■ Internet connection

This service enables you to access a wide range of i-mode-compatible websites by directly entering their URLs on your i-mode terminal.

### ■ i-mode mail

This service enables you to exchange e-mail messages up to 5,000 full-pitch characters long not only with other i-mode terminals but with anyone who has an internet e-mail address. You can also use other exciting e-mail functions such as exchanging still images and movies.



i-mode is a charged service to which you must subscribe. For information on subscribing to i-mode, refer to the back cover of the manual.


## NOTE

- New subscribers to FOMA services can access all the services as of the day of their subscription.
- If you have updated your mova service (i-mode) subscription to a FOMA service subscription, you can continue to use the "My Menu" information used under the mova service. Some sites may not retain your "My Menu" data under the FOMA service. In this event, you will need to re-register. For information on which sites will maintain your "My Menu" data, refer to "お知らせ&ヘルプ(News & Help)" in the iMenu.
- The i-mode service charges are based on the amount of information (the number of packets) you send and receive. This manual does not provide any specific information on the charges. For information on usage charges etc., refer to the "i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.
- The i-mode service details are subject to change. Refer to the "i-mode User's Manual" for details.

# Viewing Sites/Websites


## Viewing sites

You can access the services provided by an IP (information service provider). (You may need to subscribe.)

1 On the standby screen  → "iMenu"

2 "Menu List" → Select a site

The **Site** screen appears.

When SSL pages are displayed,  appears.

■ To cancel viewing

During the site viewing, .

3 During the i-mode session  → "YES"


● About "みんなNらんど"

You can download various data such as i-appli software that can be used on your FOMA terminal from the site "みんなNらんど" of iMenu. The procedure for connecting to a site "みんなNらんど" is as follows: Select "iMenu" → "メニューリスト" → "ケータイ電話メーカー" → "みんなNらんど" in order.

### NOTE

- You may be unable to view images displayed on some sites. Also, you may be unable to view the actual display on some sites.

### Function menu (Sites screen)

- While the **Sites** screen is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Add bookmark	Adds the URL for the currently displayed page to your list of bookmarks. → p.69
Add screen memo	Saves the currently displayed page as a screen memo. → p.70


Item	Description	
Save graphics	"Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → p.72	
Display property	URL	Displays the URL of the displayed page.
	Page properties	Displays the detail information on the displayed page.
	Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the displayed page supports SSL.
Bookmark	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen. You can display an i-mode site or website using a bookmark. → p.69	
Go to location	Enter a URL to connect to the website. → p.68	
Screen memo list	Shows the Screen memo list screen. → p.70	
iMenu	Shows the iMenu screen.	
Home	"Displaying Home" → p.68	
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.	
Compose message	Enables you to compose an i-mode mail with the URL for the currently displayed page or the highlighted URL pasted into the message. → p.78	
Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay the page that is not displayed correctly.	
Add to phonebook	Adds the phonebook number currently displayed on the site to your phonebook. Select a phone number or mail address → Add to phonebook (p.42)	
Retry	Replays the animation on the displayed page from the beginning.	

## Viewing websites

This function enables you to view any website simply by entering its URL.

- The number of the characters you can enter is up to 256 (half-pitch) including "http://" or "https://".

1 On the standby screen  → "Go to location"

2 "Enter URL" → Enter URL → 

### Reconnecting to the last displayed page <Last URL>

When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last website displayed is stored by the "Last URL" function. You can use this function to reconnect to the last website you visited.

1 On the standby screen  → "Last URL"

### Displaying Home

Displays the page stored as the home URL (p.76)

2 On the standby screen  → "Go to location"

3 "Home"

### Displaying sites from the URL history

The FOMA terminal records the URLs you entered in the URL history.

1 On the standby screen  → "Go to location"

2 "URL history"


The URL history screen appears.

3 Select a URL

## NOTE

- Some websites may not be displayed correctly except for i-mode-compatible websites.
- Some websites may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal.

### Function menu (URL history screen)


- While the URL history screen is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Go to location	Connects to the website with selected URL.
Enter URL	Edits URL.
Delete	Deletes highlighted URL.
Delete all	Deletes all the registered URLs. Enter your security code → "YES"
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the selected URL pasted into the message → p.78

## Adding bookmarks

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmark folders enables you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The number of the characters per a URL you can add to your bookmark is up to 256 (half-pitch). You cannot add to your bookmark if a site exceeds 256 (half-pitch) characters.

1 "Sites screen" (p.67) →  [Left]  
→ "Add bookmark" → "OK"

■ When the registered bookmarks are full

Bookmark a site newly after deleting a registered bookmark.

"YES" → Select a bookmark to delete

### NOTE

- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.


### Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or website


1 On the standby screen  → "Bookmark"

The **Bookmark list screen** appears.

2 Select a bookmark

### Function menu (Bookmark list screen)

- While the **Bookmark list screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Go to location	Connects to the website with selected bookmark.
Edit title	Edits bookmarked titles. Enter a title → "OK"
Delete	Deletes the highlighted bookmark.
Delete selected	Deletes multiple bookmarks. Select a checkbox of a bookmark to delete →  [Left] → "Delete" → "YES"
Delete all	Deletes all the bookmarks stored. Enter your security code → "YES"
URL	Displays bookmarked URLs.
Copy URL	Copies a bookmarked URL.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with a highlighted URL pasted into the message. → p.78

## Saving site content

You can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 10 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

### 1 "Sites screen" (p.67) → [Left] → "Screen memo" → "YES"

#### ■ When the stored screen memos are full

Store a screen memo newly after deleting a stored screen memo.

"YES" → Select a screen memo to delete

## Displaying a screen memo


### 1 On the standby screen → "Screen memo"


The **Screen memo list screen** appears.

### 2 Select a screen memo

The **Screen memo detail screen** appears.


## Function menu (Screen memo list screen)

- While the **Screen memo list screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Screen memo	Shows the highlighted screen memo.
Edit title	Edit a screen memo title. Enter a title → "OK"
Delete	Deletes the highlighted screen memo.
Delete selected	Deletes multiple screen memos. Select a checkbox of a bookmark to delete →  [Left] → "Delete" → "YES"
Delete all	Deletes all the screen memos stored. Enter your security code → "YES"
URL	Displays the URL of the screen memo.

Item	Description
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects the highlighted screen memo.

## Function menu (Screen memo detail screen)

- While the **Screen memo detail screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description	
Save graphics	"Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → p.72	
Display property	URL	Shows the currently displayed screen memo URL.
	Page properties	Shows the detailed information on the currently displayed screen memo.
	Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is from an SSL page.
Retry	Replays the animation in the currently displayed screen memo from the beginning.	
Edit title	Edits the currently displayed screen memo title. Enter a title → "OK"	
Delete	Deletes the currently displayed screen memo.	
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects the currently displayed screen memo.	

## NOTE

- The protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

## Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making voice/videophone calls or sending mails and viewing websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses and URLs) displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

### Phone To function

You can make a voice call or videophone call to a phone number displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

● When used for videophone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.

<Example: Making a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

**1** "Sites screen" (p.67) → Select a phone number

**2** "Voice phone"

■ To make a videophone call

"Video-phone"

### Mail To function

You can send a mail to a mail address displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

<Example: Sending a mail from the received mail detail screen>

**1** "Received mail detail screen" (p.86)

→ Select a mail address

**2** Compose an i-mode mail and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 5 on p.78.

### Web To function

You can view the website of a URL displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

<Example: Displaying a webpage from the received mail detail screen>

**1** "Received mail detail screen" (p.86)

→ Select a URL

### NOTE

- You may be unable to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions on some websites.
- You may be unable to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with some mails sent from a PC, etc.

# Downloading Data from Sites

## Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

You can save an image displayed on a site, screen memo, MessageR or MessageF and then set the saved image on the standby screen or other screen.

- To set the image as the standby screen → p.50
- The image will be saved in "INBOX" folder of "My picture".

<Example: When saving an image displayed on a site page>


**1** Sites function menu (p.67) → "Save graphics"

**2**  → "Select the image" → "YES"

The title of the image to be saved appears, and you can edit the title.

**3** 

■ To store an image from a screen memo

Function menu (Screen memo detail screen) (p.70)  
→ "Save graphics" →  → "Select an image" → "YES"

■ To store an image from MessageR or MessageF

Function menu (Message detail screen) (p.74)  
→ "Save attached file" → "Select an image" → "YES"

### NOTE

- If you set "Set image display" (p.76) to "OFF", you cannot save the data.

## Downloading Data Files from Sites

You can set and use your favourite melody as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal by downloading and saving a data file such as melody file.

- To set the melody as a ring tone → p.48

<Example: Downloading melodies from sites>

**1** "Sites screen" (p.67) → "Select a data file"

**2** "Save"

The title of the melody to be saved appears, and you can edit the title.

**3** 

## Downloading, Playing and Saving i-motion from Sites

i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data downloaded from an imotion site to your FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA terminal can play i-motion in the MP4 format (Mobile MP4). i-motion in the ASF format cannot be downloaded.
- i-motion will be saved in "INBOX" folder in imotion.

**1** "Sites screen" (p.67) → "Select an imotion"

**2** "Play"

"Operation during the i-motion playback" → p.106

**3** "Save"

The title of the i-motion to be saved appears, and you can edit the title.

**4** 

### NOTE

- You may be unable to save some downloaded i-motion data in the FOMA terminal.
- If "Automatic play" (p.76) is set to "ON", the i-motion is played after downloaded.
- The number of i-motion that can be saved → p.102

## Using Message Service Functions

### Viewing messages

#### When You Receive a Message

When the FOMA terminal is in an i-mode service area, MessageR and MessageF are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will save up to 20 received MessageR and 10 MessageF respectively.

**1** When a message is received, the "R" (orange) or "F" (yellowish green) icon flashes and the "Message R Receiving..." or "Message F Receiving..." message is displayed.

If you select "Message R" or "Message F", the received mail list screen appears.



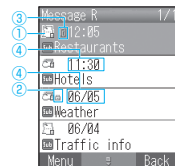
#### NOTE

- When a new MessageR/MessageF arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with other MessageR/MessageF or i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center.
- If you have already stored the maximum allowable number of MessageR/MessageF when you receive a new MessageR/MessageF, the oldest MessageR/MessageF that is neither unread nor protected is deleted before the new message is received.

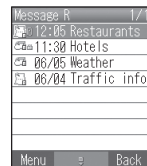
#### How to view the Message R and Message F screens

The Message R and Message F screens appear as shown below.

- Some of the icons displayed on the Message R and Message F list screens are also shown on the Message R and Message F detail screens. Some icons are not displayed.



List screen  
(2 lines display)



List screen  
(1 line display)



Detail screen

- ① Shows the message type.

: Unread Message R

: Read Message R

: Unread Message F

: Read Message F

- ② : Protected Message R/Message F

- ③ : Shows any attached or pasted file.

- ④ Shows the message arrival time and date. Shows time for the messages received on the same day, and date for the messages received till the previous day.

## Function menu (message list screen)

- While the **message list screen** is displayed, press  $\odot$ [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description	
Delete	Deletes the highlighted MessageR/MessageF.	
Delete selected	Deletes multiple MessageR/MessageF. Select a check box of the message to delete → $\odot$ [Left]→"Delete"→"YES"	
Delete all	Deletes all the stored MessageR/MessageF. Enter your security code→"YES"	
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects the highlighted MessageR/MessageF.	
Sort	Sorts the MessageR/MessageF according to the specified criterion.	
	By subject ↑	Sorts in ascending order by subject.
	By subject ↓	Sorts in descending order by subject.
	Chronological ↓	Sorts in standard chronological order.
	Chronological ↑	Sorts in reverse chronological order.
Filter	Displays only the messages that meet the specified criterion.	
	Display all	Displays all the MessageR/MessageF.
	Unread	Displays only the unread MessageR/MessageF.
	Read	Displays only the read MessageR/MessageF.
	Protected	Displays only the MessageR/MessageF protected.
	Not protected	Displays only the MessageR/MessageF unprotected.
	Pasted	Displays only the MessageR/MessageF with data attached.
Attached	Displays only the MessageR/MessageF with a file attached.	

## Function menu (message detail screen)

- While the **message detail screen** is displayed, press  $\odot$ [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Delete	Deletes the MessageR/MessageF displayed on the message detail screen.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects the MessageR/MessageF displayed on the message detail screen.
Add to phonebook	Highlights the mail addresses or phone numbers on the message body and adds to phonebook. "YES"→Add to phonebook (p.42)
Save melody	Saves a melody attached to or pasted into MessageR/MessageF.
Save attached file	Saves an image attached to MessageR/MessageF. "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" →p.72

## Checking for messages

- MessageR and MessageF delivered to the i-mode Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, your messages are held at the i-mode Center when the FOMA terminal is turned off, "i" is displayed or Message boxes are full.
- Use "Set check new msg." (p.76) to specify which items are checked for.

### 1 On the standby screen

→"Check new message"

### 2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

#### NOTE

- When the "i" (orange) or "F" (yellowish green) icon appears, there is a MessageR or MessageF held for you at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your MessageR/MessageF is full, the "i" (red) or "F" (red) icon appears.
- If icons such as "i" (red), "R" (red) and "F" (red) are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail, MessageR/MessageF. To receive a new mail or message, delete the unnecessary mail or MessageR/MessageF or read the unread mails or messages until those icons no longer appear. The mails or MessageR/MessageF are overwritten starting with the oldest one as a new mail or message is received unless they are not protected.

## Specifying Your i-mode Settings

### ● Home URL setting

You can set the home URL and whether or not to enable the home URL display (Default setting: "Invalid").

#### 1 On the standby screen → "i-mode settings"

The i-mode settings screen appears.

#### 2 "Home URL" → "Valid"


■ To invalidate the home setting

"Invalid"

#### 3 Select Home URL box → Enter the home URL → "OK"

### ● Display settings

#### 1 "i-mode settings" → "Display settings" → Select any item from the followings:


Item	Description
Character size	Sets the character size on a site page or the detail screen body for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF (Default setting: "Standard").
Set image display	Sets whether or not to display the image for a site page and the detail screen for screen memo (Default setting: "ON").
Scroll	Sets the number of scrolling lines on a site page, the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF when  is pressed. Select from "1 line", "3 lines" and "5 lines" (Default setting: "1 line").
Message list disp.	Sets the number of lines on the message list screen. Select either "1 line" or "2 lines" (Default setting: "2 lines").
Pasted melody	Sets the melody attached to the MessageR/MessageF to be valid/invalid (Default setting: "Valid").

### ● Certificate setting

Checks SSL certificates details or sets the certificate to be valid/invalid.


#### 1 "i-mode settings" → "Certificate"

#### 2 Highlight the certificate to be Valid/Invalid

→  [Left] → "Valid/Invalid"

■ To check the details of the certificate

Highlight the certificate to check

→  [Left] → "Certificate info"

### ● Other settings

#### 1 "i-mode settings" → "Other settings" → Select any item

Item	Description
Connection timeout	Sets the delay after which the FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response. Select either "60 seconds" or "90 seconds". If you set "Disabled", the connection will not be stopped automatically (Default setting: "60 seconds").
Automatic play	Sets whether or not to replay i-motion automatically (Default setting: "ON").
Set check new msg.	Sets items to "Check new message" (p.75) (Default settings: "Mail", "Message R" and "Message F"). Select check boxes from "Mail", "Message R" and "Message F" to check → "OK"
Check settings	Enables you to check the settings specified in "i-mode settings".
Reset settings	Resets the settings specified in "i-mode settings" to the default setting. Enter your security code → "YES"

# Mail

<b>What is i-mode Mail?</b> .....	<b>78</b>
<b>Composing and Sending i-mode Mail</b> ..... <Compose message/Send>	<b>78</b>
Attaching files to i-mode mail .....	80
Sending draft i-mode mail .....	81
<b>Reading/Replying to/Forwarding i-mode Mail</b> ..... <Receive/Reply/Forward>	<b>82</b>
Displaying i-mode mail .....	82
Receiving i-mode mail selectively .....	83
Checking for i-mode mail.....	83
Replying to i-mode mail.....	84
Forwarding i-mode mail to other recipients .....	84
Playing and saving data attached in i-mode mail .....	85
Displaying i-mode mail in the Inbox and Outbox.....	86
<b>Setting Up the Mail Functions</b> ..... <Mail settings>	<b>90</b>
<b>Composing and Sending SMS(Short Message)</b> .....	<b>92</b>
Sending draft SMS (Short Message) .....	93
<b>Reading/Replying to/Forwarding SMS (Short Message)</b> .. <Receive/Reply/Forward>	<b>93</b>
Displaying SMS (Short Message).....	93
Checking for SMS (Short Message) .....	94
Displaying SMS (Short Message) in the Inbox and Outbox.....	94
<b>Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings</b> .....	<b>96</b>

## What is i-mode Mail?

Subscribing to i-mode, as well as allowing you to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova phones), also lets you send and receive e-mail messages via the Internet.

For details, refer to the "i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.

Your mail address when you subscribe to i-mode is determined as described below.

### New i-mode subscribers

The part before the @ symbol in your e-mail address is randomly created using a combination of alphanumeric characters. You should check what your e-mail address is after you subscribe to the i-mode service.

Example: abc1234~789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<To check your own e-mail address>

Menu screen → "English" → (4) Options → (1) Mail settings → "Confirm Mail Address"

- When mail is exchanged between i-mode terminals (including movas), only the part before the @ symbol in the e-mail address needs to be entered.
- To receive mail sent from a PC via e-mail, the full e-mail address, including "@docomo.ne.jp" must be used.

- How to send an i-mode mail → p.78
- How to receive an i-mode mail → p.82

<Compose message/Send>

## Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

### 1 On the standby screen

● [Right] → "Compose message"

The **New mail** screen appears.



### 2 "To" → Enter an e-mail address

If the recipient has a stored secret code, enter "phone number" or "[phone number]xxxx@docomo.ne.jp (xxxx is a secret code) in the "To" field.

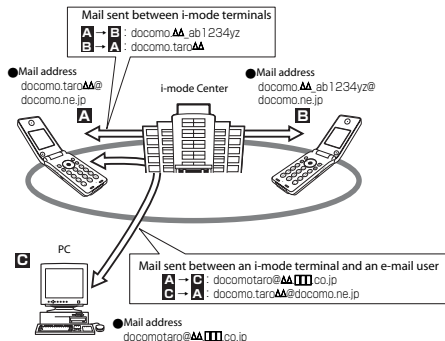
### 3 "Sub" → Enter a subject

You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters in the subject field.

### 4 "Body" → Enter message body

You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters in the message field.


### 5 Check the message → ● [Left] → "Send"



## NOTE

- You can store up to 100 mails in total for sent mails and stored mails.
- If the total number of sent mail and stored mail items stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds the limit on the number or the storage capacity of sent mail, sent mail is automatically replaced starting with the oldest message. However sent mail items protected are not deleted. It is recommended to protect any important sent mail that you want to keep. →p.88
- If the destination e-mail address is in the "phone number" or "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format, make sure whether the recipient set a secret code or not. If he/she sets a secret code, send a mail with the secret mode.
  - Store the phonebook →p.42
  - For details of a secret code, refer to the "i-mode User's Manual".
- When sending mail to phones that do not support i-mode, do not use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in the subject or the message body as the recipients may not be able to display the mail correctly.
- You cannot send i-mode mail to addresses that include a comma (,) or a space (blank).
- You must set an address in the "To" field to send i-mode mail.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly. Also, the "Transmission failed" message may appear even after the message has been sent. The message is saved in Outbox.
- Provided the recipient is an i-mode subscriber, you can also send i-mode mail from the FOMA terminal to a mova service i-mode terminal.
- For information on the function menu when entering an e-mail address, a subject or message body →p.129

## Function menu (New mail screen)

- While the **New mail screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Send	Sends a mail you are currently editing.
Save	Saves the i-mode mail message you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. The saved message can be sent later. →p.81

Item	Description
Add receiver	You can enter up to 5 addresses in the "To," "Cc" and/or "Bcc" field(s).
	<b>Quote phonebook</b> Adds an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. →p.44
	<b>Enter address</b> Adds the e-mail address by entering the address directly.
Address*1	Highlighting the address, the following procedure is available.
	<b>Quote phonebook</b> Enter an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. →p.44
	<b>Enter address</b> Enter the e-mail address directly.
	<b>Change to To*2</b> Changes the mail address entered in the "Cc" or "Bcc" field to the "To" field.
	<b>Change to Cc*2</b> Changes the mail address entered in the "To" or "Bcc" field to the "Cc" field. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.
	<b>Change to Bcc</b> Changes the mail address entered in the "To" or "Cc" field to the "Bcc" field. E-mail addresses entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.
	<b>Delete receiver</b> Deletes an added address.
Attach file	Attaches the image, i-motion or melody or to an i-mode mail message. →p.80
Add signature	Pastes your signature into the i-mode mail message →p.90
Erase message	Erases the message body in the current i-mode mail message.
Delete	Deletes the current i-mode mail message

- \*1: You must set an address in the "To" field to send i-mode mail.  
\*2: The entered e-mail addresses are usually displayed to the recipient. However, depending on the terminal device and mail software used by the recipient, the e-mail addresses may not be displayed.

## Attaching files to i-mode mail

The table below shows the files that can be attached to i-mode mail.

File type	Max. files attached to 1 mail	Comments
Melody	10	You can attach up to 10 image or melody files in all, up to a total size of 10,000 bytes (5,000 full-pitch characters). The maximum number of files varies according to file size.
Image <sup>*1</sup>		
Large image <sup>*2</sup>	1	You can attach 1 large image, movie or i-motion. *Some i-motion cannot be attached.
Movie/i-motion <sup>*3</sup> (i-motion mail)		

\*1: Still image shot using the built-in camera or a JPEG or GIF format image of 10,000 bytes or less that was downloaded from a site.

\*2: JPEG format image larger than 10,000 bytes but no larger than 100K bytes. Note that the size is changed at the i-shot Center to the one suitable for being received at an i-mode terminal before being sent to the recipient. You cannot attach a GIF image that exceeds 10,000 bytes.

\*3: Movie or i-motion of up to 100K bytes

I "New mail screen"(p.78)→⊙ [Left]  
→"Attach file"

Item	Description
Attach file	Select a file from a folder of "My picture", "i-motion" or "Melody".
Delete attached	Deletes the attachment file.
Check attached	Displays an attached image or plays an attached i-motion or melody.→p.102, 104, 106

### ■ To send an image as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal

You can send an image-attached mail as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal.

If you send an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG image. However, when attached images are sent to a mova service i-mode terminal, they are sent as an image browser URL with an automatically assigned storage period. The mova service user can then retrieve the image by selecting the URL. If you attach multiple files or attach a GIF-format image downloaded from an i-mode site or website, all the attached files are deleted and only the message reaches the recipient.

### NOTE

- Depending on the recipient's mobile phone model, the sent image may be displayed incorrectly or may not be displayed. A coarse image may also be displayed.
- When you send an i-motion mail, depending upon the phone model of the recipient, movies may be choppy and may be converted to continuous still images for viewing.
- Attached melodies or GIF images cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.
- You cannot attach a file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it from the FOMA terminal.
- Pictures (still images)/movies shot with the built-in camera are not targeted by FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction function. Also, please be considerate of the privacy of individuals as the FOMA terminal cannot ban the output of pictures (still images)/movies outside of the FOMA terminal.
- If the recipient is not using a FOMA N600i, melodies you send may not be playable.

## Sending draft i-mode mail

This feature enables you to edit and resend a message that you have saved earlier.

### 1 On the standby screen

- [Right]→"Draft"

The **Draft mail list screen** screen appears.

### 2 Select a mail→Edit the address, subject or message body, and then send the mail



### Function menu (Draft mail list screen)

- While the **Draft mail list screen** is displayed, press ● [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Send	Sends the highlighted mail.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted mail.
Delete selected	Deletes multiple mails. Select a checkbox of a mail you want to delete→● [Left]→"Delete"→"YES"
Delete all	Deletes all the draft mail. Enter your security code→"YES"

Item	Description	
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.	
	By subject ↑	Sorts by ascending order of the subject.
	By subject ↓	Sorts by descending order of the subject.
	By address ↑	Sorts by ascending order of the address of the sender.
	By address ↓	Sorts by descending order of the address of the sender.
	Chronological ↓	Sorts in chronological order.
Chronological ↑	Sorts in reverse chronological order.	
Filter	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.	
	Display all	Displays all the mail.
	Attached	Displays only mails with a file attached.

## Reading/Replying/Forwarding i-mode Mail

### Displaying i-mode mail

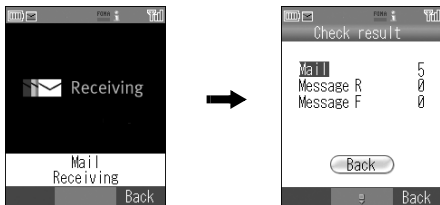
#### When you receive i-mode mail

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 200 received i-mode mails.

1 When you receive an i-mode mail, the " " (gray) icon flashes and the "Mail Receiving..." message appears

Select "Mail" to display the received mail list screen.



#### NOTE

- If the total number of received i-mode mail messages stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds the limit on the number of received mail message or the storage limit, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the oldest message. Note that received mails in unread or protected are not deleted. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. →p.88
- If you exceed the limit on the number of received mails in unread or protected that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal can receive no further mail, and the " " (red) icon appears. To receive a new message, you should delete the received mails stored on the FOMA terminal until the icon vanishes, read the unread mails, or perform "Check new message" after unprotecting protected mails.
- When new i-mode mail is delivered to your FOMA terminal, you also receive any other i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF that were being held at the i-mode Center.

#### Displaying the new i-mode mail

1 On the standby screen → " " → " " " "



2 Select a received mail

#### NOTE

- Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either "/" or "/" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- The FOMA terminal may sometimes be unable to correctly display images attached to i-mode mail.
- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions included in a mail message received from a PC.

## Receiving i-mode mail selectively



You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail.

- To use this function, you must first select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (p.90).


### 1 On the standby screen [Right] → "Receive option"

For further procedure, refer to "i-mode User's Manual".

### ● When an i-mode mail arrives

When the i-mode Center notifies you of mail reception, the " (gray)" icon which indicates mails at the i-mode Center is displayed rather than " (gray)".

#### NOTE

- You can also access "Receive option" as follows (only Japanese mode available):
  - On the standby screen  → "iMenu"  
→ "メニューリスト" → "Rcv. option setting"
- If you manually check for a new message, all messages will be received even if the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON".
- If you set this setting to "ON", you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail.








## Checking for i-mode mail

- i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center is automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, when the FOMA terminal is turned off, when you are outside the service area, or when the Inbox is full, your mail is held at the i-mode Center.
- Use "Set check new messages"(p.90) to specify which items are checked for.

### 1 On the standby screen [Right] → "Check new message"

### 2 Check for each count of the i-mode mails or the MessageR and MessageF messages which were newly received →

#### NOTE

- If the " (gray)" icon is displayed, you have i-mode mail messages held at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your i-mode mail messages is full, the " (red)" icon is displayed.
- If icons such as " (red)", " (red)" and " (red)" are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF. To receive a new mail or message, delete the unnecessary mails or MessageR/MessageF until those icons no longer appear, or read the unread mails or MessageR/MessageF. The mails or messages are overwritten starting with the oldest one as a new mail or message is received. However, a protected i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF is not deleted.
- Even when there is i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center, the " (gray)" icon may not be displayed if the mail arrived at the center while the FOMA terminal is turned off or the " (gray)" is displayed.

## Replying to i-mode mail

- A reply has "Re:" automatically inserted at the beginning of the subject.

**1** "Received mail detail screen"(p.86)  
→ [Left] → "Reply" → "Reply" → Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 5 on p.78.

■ **To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses**

"Reply" → "Reply all"

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

### NOTE

- You cannot reply to an i-shot mail sent from the address "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp".

## Replying by quoting the received message

Use this procedure to quote the received i-mode mail in your reply.

- Attached files are deleted when you quote i-mode mail.

**1** "Received mail detail screen"(p.86) → [Left] → "Reply" → "Reply with quote" → Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 5 on p.78.

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

■ **To send a reply with quote to all the broadcast addresses**

"Reply" → "Reply all w/quote"

### NOTE

- When data such as a melody is pasted in an i-mode mail message, the pasted data is not quoted when replying to the i-mode mail.

## Forwarding i-mode mail to other recipients

- Forwarded mail has "Fw:" automatically inserted at the beginning of the subject.

**1** "Received mail detail screen"(p.86) → [Left] → "Forward" → Enter an e-mail address

For detailed information on entering addresses → p.79

You can edit the subject and/or message body before forwarding i-mode mail.

**2** [Left] → "Send"

### NOTE

- If the forwarded i-mode mail has an attached or pasted file that is prohibited to be attached to a mail or output from the FOMA terminal, the file and its information is deleted.
- Images are not attached when you forward an i-mode mail without downloading the image after you receive it.
- If data is pasted in an i-mode mail message, the pasted data is not quoted when forwarding the i-mode mail.

## Playing and saving data attached in i-mode mail

### Playing and saving a melody in i-mode mail

Use this procedure to save a melody attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal.

- If the sender was not using a FOMA N600i, the received melody may not play correctly.

<Example: To save an attached melody>

**1** "Received mail detail screen"(p.86)→Highlight a file name of the melody

**2** [Left]→"Save melody"→"YES"

A title of the melody to be saved is displayed, and you can edit the title.

**3**

The melody is automatically saved to the "INBOX" folder in Melody.

#### ■ To stop the melody

[X] or [#]

#### ■ To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open a mail

Set "Automatic play"(p.91) to "OFF"

#### ■ When there is no more space for saving melodies

Delete an unnecessary melody and then save melodies.

### NOTE

- If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.

### Saving images in image mail

This function enables you to save images attached to received i-mode mail.

**1** "Received mail detail screen"(p.86)→Highlight a file name of the image

**2** [Left]→"Save attached"→"YES"

A title of the image is displayed, and you can edit the title.

**3**

The image is automatically saved to the "INBOX" folder in My picture.

#### ■ When there is no more space for saving images

Delete unnecessary images and then save images.

#### ■ To save a large still image

When you receive an i-mode mail, the large still image is not saved to the FOMA terminal. This function downloads the image from the i-mode Center and saves it on your FOMA terminal.

"Received mail detail screen"→Select a URL

→"YES"→ [Left]→"Save graphics"

### Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion mail

When you receive an i-motion data sent as i-motion mail, the data is not downloaded to the FOMA terminal when you receive mail. This function downloads the i-motion from the i-motion Mail Center and saves it on your FOMA terminal.

- You receive the mail to which the URL to browse the i-motion is attached.
- Select an i-motion mail beforehand.

**1** "Received mail detail screen"(p.86)→Select a URL→"YES"

**2** "Save"

A title of the i-motion to be saved is displayed, and you can edit the title.

**3**

The i-motion is automatically saved in the "INBOX" folder under i-motion.

#### ■ To cancel i-motion downloading mid-way

While downloading the i-motion, →"YES"

### NOTE

- If "Automatic play"(p.76) is set to "ON", the i-motion is played after downloading.

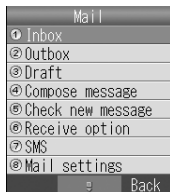
## Displaying i-mode mail in the Inbox and Outbox

The FOMA terminal will hold up to 200 i-mode mails for received mails and up to 100 i-mode mails in total for sent and draft mails. The number of mail messages that can be saved and protected varies depending on the amount of data in each message.

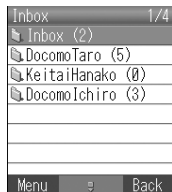
<Example: Reading a received mail message>

1 On the standby screen **[Right]** → "Inbox"

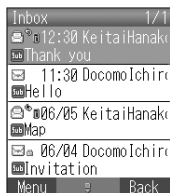
2 Select a folder → Select a mail



Mail menu screen



Inbox folder screen



Received mail list screen



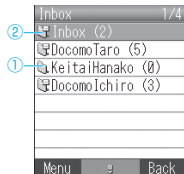
Received mail detail screen

### To view the previous or next mail

Mail detail screen → **[Left]**

Press **[Right]** to return to the received mail list screen.

### Guide to the folder list screens

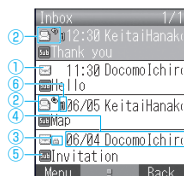


Inbox folder screen

1 : Contains no unread mail.

2 : Contains unread mail.

### Guide to the mail list screens



Received mail list screen

1 : Unread mail

2 : Read mail

: Replied-to mail

: Forwarded mail

3 : Protected mail

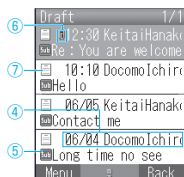
4 : Shows the time and date of transmission and the sender/recipient.  
5 : Shows the subject of a mail.

6 : Shows a file is attached.

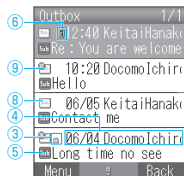
7 : Draft i-mode mail

8 : i-mode mail sent successfully

9 : i-mode mail sent unsuccessfully



Draft mail list screen



Sent mail list screen

## ● Guide to the mail detail screens



- ①:Receive
- ②: Received mail
- ③: Replied-to mail
- ④: Forwarded mail
- ⑤: Protected mail
- ③: Shows the sender/recipient.
- ④: Shows the sender type/recipient type.

- : Sender who addressed the mail specifically to you.
- : Sender who sent a copy of the message as a broadcast mail specifically to you.
- : Sender who sent the broadcast mail that was set up not to display the address of other recipients to you.
- : Recipient to which the mail was sent.
- : Recipient to which the mail was sent for broadcasting as a copy.
- : Recipient to which the broadcast mail that was set up not to display the address of other recipients was sent.



- ⑤: Shows the time and date of transmission.
- ⑥: Shows the subject of a mail.
- ⑦: Shows the mail message.
- ⑧: Shows the end of the message body.
- ⑨: When a message includes attached files or pasted data, this shows the icon, file name and file size (in bytes). When an image is attached, this also shows the image.
- : Shows the melody is pasted.
- : The pasted melody file is faulty.
- : The file is faulty.
- : Shows the melody is attached.
- : Shows the image is attached.
- : Shows the movie is attached.
- : Shows the large still image/movie is attached. You can download the file by selecting a URL.→p.85

: Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

- ⑩: Transmission
- : Mail sent successfully
- : Mail sent unsuccessfully

## Function menu (Inbox folder screen)

- While the **Inbox folder screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
<b>Add folder</b>	Adds a new folder. Enter a folder name →
<b>Edit folder name</b>	Edits a folder name. Highlight a folder → Enter a folder name →
<b>Delete folder</b>	Deletes the highlighted folder.
<b>Auto-sort</b>	Sets an e-mail address or subject to a folder in Inbox, and automatically sorts a received mail to the folder. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· You cannot set an e-mail address and subject to the sort criteria at the same time.</li> </ul> <p>To set an e-mail address</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [Left] → "Address sort" → "Quote phone-book" (p.44), or "Enter address" → Enter an e-mail address</li> <li>· You can set up to 5 e-mail addresses.</li> </ul> <p>To set a subject</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [Left] → "Subject sort" → Enter a subject</li> </ul> <p>To deselect the selected/all the auto-sort setting</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [Left] → "Release" or "Release all" → "YES"</li> </ul>

## NOTE

- If a mail is in a folder, you cannot delete the folder.
- If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sort setting for that folder is also canceled.

## Function menu (received mail list screen)

- While the **received mail list screen** is displayed, press **[Left]** to display the function menu.

Item	Description	
Move	Moves the highlighted mail to another folder. Select the destination folder	
Delete	Deletes the highlighted mail.	
Delete selected	Deletes multiple mails. Select a checkbox of a mail you want to delete → <b>[Left]</b> → "Delete" → "YES"	
Delete all	Deletes all the received mails. Enter your security code → "YES"	
Protect ON/ OFF	Protects or unprotects the highlighted mail.	
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.	
	By subject ↑	Sorts by ascending order of the subject.
	By subject ↓	Sorts by descending order of the subject.
	By address ↑	Sorts by ascending order of the address of the sender.
	By address ↓	Sorts by descending order of the address of the sender.
	Chronological ↓	Sorts in chronological order.
	Chronological ↑	Sorts in reverse chronological order.
Filter	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.	
	Display all	Display all the mail.
	Unread	Displays only unread mail.
	Read	Displays only read mail.
	Protected	Displays only protected mail.
	Not protected	Displays only the unprotected mail.
	Pasted	Displays only mail with a pasted data.
	Attached	Displays only mail with an attached file.

## Function menu (sent mail list screen)

- While the **sent mail list screen** is displayed, press **[Left]** to display the function menu.

Item	Description	
Edit	Edits the highlighted mail and sends it. Edit the address, subject or message body → <b>[Left]</b> → "Send"	
Delete	Deletes the highlighted mail.	
Delete selected	Deletes multiple mails. Select a checkbox of a mail you want to delete → <b>[Left]</b> → "Delete" → "YES"	
Delete all	Deletes all the received mails. Enter your security code → "YES"	
Protect ON/ OFF	Protects or unprotects the highlighted mail.	
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.	
	By subject ↑	Sorts by ascending order of the subject.
	By subject ↓	Sorts by descending order of the subject.
	By address ↑	Sorts by ascending order of the address of the recipient.
	By address ↓	Sorts by descending order of the address of the recipient.
	Chronological ↓	Sorts in chronological order.
	Chronological ↑	Sorts in reverse chronological order.
	Filter	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.
		Display all
Protected		Displays only protected mail.
Not protected		Displays only the unprotected mail.
Attached		Displays only mail with an attached file.

### Function menu (received mail detail screen)

- While the **received mail detail screen** is displayed, press **[Left]** to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Reply	"Replying to i-mode mail" →p.84
Forward	"Forwarding i-mode mail to other recipients" →p.84
Move	Moves the currently displayed mail to another folder. <b>Select the destination folder</b>
Delete	Deletes the currently displayed mail.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects the currently displayed mail.
Save address	Adds the e-mail address of a sender of received mail to your phonebook. "YES"→Store the phonebook (p.42) <b>When there are multiple e-mail addresses to be added</b> <b>Select the e-mail address you want to add</b> →"YES"
Add to phonebook	Highlights the e-mail address or phone number of the i-mode mail message and adds it to your phonebook. "YES"→Store the phonebook (p.42)
Save melody	"Playing and saving data attached in i-mode mail" →p.85
Save attached	"Saving Images in Image Mail" →p.85
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. · Up to 2,048 bytes can be copied.


### Function menu (sent mail detail screen)

- While the **sent mail detail screen** is displayed, press **[Left]** to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Edit	Edits a mail and sends it. <b>Edit the address, subject or message body</b> → <b>[Left]</b> →"Send"
Delete	Deletes the displayed mail.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects the displayed mail.
Save address	Adds the e-mail address of a recipient specified in a sent i-mode mail to your phonebook. "YES"→Store the phonebook (p.42) <b>When there are multiple addresses to be added</b> <b>Select the address you want to add</b> →"YES"→Store the phonebook
Add to phonebook	Highlights the e-mail address or phone number of the i-mode mail message and adds it to your phonebook. "YES"→Store the phonebook (p.42)
Copy	Copies the message body or subject. · Up to 2,048 bytes can be copied.

## Setting Up the Mail Functions

### ● Communication settings

1 On the standby screen  [Right]  
→"Mail settings"

2 "Receive settings"  
The Mail settings screen appears.

3 Select any item

Item	Description	
Rcv. option setting	Sets whether to receive mail selectively (Default setting: "OFF").	
	ON	Does not automatically receive mail.
	OFF	Receives mail automatically.
Attach file set	Sets whether to receive the attached file (Default settings: "Melody-valid", "Image-valid"). Select a checkbox of the attached file you want to receive →"OK"	
Set check new msg.	Select the items checked for when you send an inquiry to the i-mode Center by "Check new messages"(p.83) (Default settings: "Mail", "Message R", "Message F"). Select a checkbox of the items you want to send an inquiry to the i-mode Center →"OK"	


### ● Edit settings

1 "Mail settings screen"→"Edit settings"→Select any item

Item	Description
Signature	Stores your name or other information to be added at the end of an i-mode mail message body (signature) (Default setting: Not insert). Select the "Insert" checkbox →Select the signature box →Enter your signature→ →"OK" To compose mail without adding a signature automatically Deselect the "Insert" checkbox for the signature→"OK"
Quotation mark	Edits a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message (Default setting: ">"). Select the Quotation mark box→Enter the quotation mark→"OK"

### ● Display settings

1 "Mail settings screen"→"Display settings"  
→ Select any item

Item	Description
Character size	Select the size of characters in the message body displayed on the mail detail screen from "Small" or "Standard" (Default setting: "Standard").
Scroll	Select any of "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines" to specify the number of lines scrolled when using  on the mail detail screen (Default setting: "1 line").
Mail list display	Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the mail list screen. You can select either of "1 line (subject)", "1 line (address)", "1 line (name)", "2 lines (address)" or "2 lines (name)" (Default setting: "2 lines (name)").

Item	Description
Mail security	<p>Enables you to apply security measures to your Inbox, Outbox or Draft so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your approval. Mailboxes or folders with security set cannot be opened unless the security code is entered (Default setting: None).</p> <p>Enter your security code → Select a checkbox of the mailbox you want to apply security measures→"OK"</p> <p>To cancel security measures Enter your security code→Select a checkbox you want to deselect→"OK"</p>
Automatic play	Sets whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail (Default setting: "ON").
Pasted data	Sets whether to enable the melody pasted to a received i-mode mail (Default setting: "Pasted melody").

## ● Other settings

**1** "Mail settings screen"→"Other settings"  
→ Select any item

Item	Description
Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in "Mail settings"
Reset settings	Resets the settings specified in "Mail settings" to the default. Enter your security code→"OK"

## Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and the supported overseas carriers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

### 1 On the standby screen


- [Right] → "SMS" → "Compose SMS"

The **New SMS screen** appears.

### 2 Enter the phone number into the "To" field

You can only enter 1 address/phone number.

- If the recipient is using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo

Enter "+" (hold down the  key for 1 second or longer) - the country code - the other party's mobile phone number. If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. You can also send SMS by entering in order of "010", "Country code" and "the other party's mobile phone number" (To reply to SMS received from overseas, enter "010" to send overseas).

In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:

- When it includes characters other than numbers, asterisks (\*) or hash symbols (#)
- When it includes "+" as second or later character
- When it includes a space

If you try to send an SMS to a phone number preceded by "184" or "186", the "184" or "186" prefix is deleted and the SMS is sent.

### 3 Enter mail messages into the "Message" field

You can enter up to 70 full-pitch or 160 half-pitch characters in the message field.



### 4 ○ [Left] → "Send"

The successfully sent SMS is saved in Sent, and the unsuccessfully sent SMS is saved in Outbox.



## ● SMS (Short Message) report <Disp. SMS report>

If "ON" is selected in "SMS report request" (p.93), you receive an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox, enabling you to check whether the message successfully reached the recipient.

To view an SMS with an SMS report, select the SMS report (/  icon) in the received mail list screen.

### NOTE

- SMS is received as i-mode mail by a mova service i-mode terminal. Short mail sent from the phone such as a mova service i-mode terminal is received on the FOMA terminal as SMS.
- If you remove the battery pack while an SMS is being sent, the SMS will not be sent and saved in Draft.
- If "SMS report request" is set, you cannot send an SMS to a mova service i-mode terminal.
- If you exceed the limit on the number of or the storage capacity for sent SMS that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, sent SMS is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message.
- When you send SMS to the other party who uses overseas carriers other than DoCoMo, characters that the party's terminal does not support may not be displayed properly.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- Even when "Caller ID Notification" (p.28) is set to "OFF", your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- For information on the function menu when entering an e-mail address, a subject or message body → p.129

### Function menu (New SMS screen)

- While the **New SMS screen** is displayed, press ○ [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Send	Sends an SMS.
Save	Saves the SMS you are currently editing in Draft. SMS saved by this function can be sent later. → p.93
SMS valid period	Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center by selecting "None", "1 day", "2 days" or "3 days". Set "None" to not store SMS at the SMS Center.

Item	Description
SMS report request	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.

## Sending draft SMS (Short Message)

You can edit and send the draft SMS.

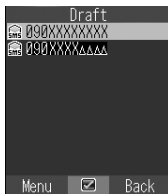
1 On the standby screen [Right] → "SMS"

2 "Draft"

The draft SMS list screen appears.

3 Select an SMS

→Edit the address or message body and then send the mail



### Function menu (draft SMS list screen)

- While the **draft SMS list screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the draft SMS.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted SMS.
Delete all	Deletes all the draft SMS. Enter your security code→ "YES"

### NOTE

- Since you cannot protect SMS, be careful when you delete an SMS or all the SMS.

## <Receive/Reply/Forward>

# Reading/Replying to/Forwarding SMS (Short Message)

## Displaying SMS (Short Message)

### When you receive an SMS (Short Message)

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 200 SMS (total of received SMS, sent SMS and draft SMS).
- Short mail sent from the phone such as a mova terminal is received on the FOMA terminal as SMS.



1 When you receive an SMS, the "SMS" (orange) icon appears and the "SMS receiving..." message appears

On the standby screen, " " is displayed.

### NOTE

- Once you reach the limit on the total number of unread received SMS, sent SMS and draft SMS that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, you can no longer receive SMS and "SMS" (red) appears on the screen. To enable SMS reception, you should delete the received SMS stored on the FOMA terminal until the icon vanishes, or you should perform "Check new SMS" after reading the unread SMS.
- If you reach the limit on the number of unread SMS saved in the FOMA terminal (Phone), the FOMA terminal can receive no further SMS even if the destination of SMS is set to "UIM" in "Select storage" (p.96).
- If 20 SMS messages are saved in the FOMA card (UIM), the FOMA terminal can receive no further SMS even if the destination of SMS is set to "Phone" in "Select storage" (p.96).

## Viewing received SMS (Short Message)

- 1 On the standby screen →  → "SMS" 





- 2 Select a received SMS

### NOTE

- Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
- SMS report is sent to you only when the FOMA terminal is set to "ON" in "SMS report request" (p.93).

## Checking for SMS (Short Message)


- SMS that arrive at the SMS Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are held at the Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, if you are outside the service area, or if the FOMA terminal's memory is full.

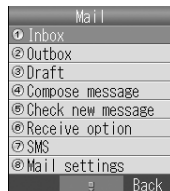
- 1 On the standby screen  [Right] → "SMS"  
→ "Check new SMS"
- 2 Check the numbers of the newly received SMS  
→ 

## Displaying SMS (Short message) in the Inbox and Outbox

The number of SMS that can be saved and protected varies depending on the amount of data in each message.

<Example: Reading a received SMS>

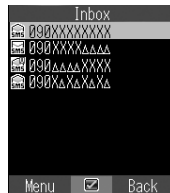
- 1 On the standby screen  [Right] → "SMS"
- 2 "Inbox" → Select an SMS



Mail menu screen




SMS menu screen



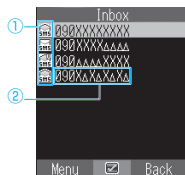
Received SMS list screen



Received SMS detail screen

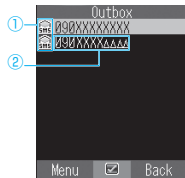
- To display the previous or next page  
SMS detail screen →  

## ● Guide to the SMS list screens



Received SMS list screen

- ① : Unread SMS
- : Read/sent SMS
- : Unread SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)
- : Read SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)
- : Unread SMS report
- : Read SMS report
- : Unread SMS report in the FOMA card (UIM)
- : Read SMS report in the FOMA card (UIM)

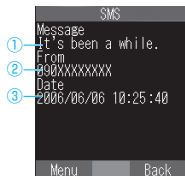


Sent SMS list screen

- ②: Shows the sender/recipient.

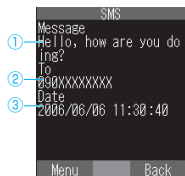
※ The unsuccessfully sent SMS list screen in Outbox is displayed as same as the left screen.

## ● Guide to the SMS detail screen



Received SMS detail screen

- ①: Shows the mail message.
- ②: Shows the sender/recipient.
- ③: Shows the time and date of transmission.



Sent SMS detail screen

※ The displayed contents are the same between sent SMS detail screens in the Outbox and Sent.

### Function menu (received SMS/sent SMS list screen)

- While the **received SMS/sent SMS list screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Read	Displays the highlighted SMS detail screen.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted SMS.
Delete all	Deletes all the received SMS/sent SMS. Enter your security code→"YES"

### Function menu (received SMS detail screen)

- While the **received SMS detail screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Reply	Sends a reply to a sender of SMS. Edit the message→  [Left]→"Send"
Forward	Forwards a reply to a sender of SMS. Enter a phone number→  [Left]→"Send" You can also edit the message before forwarding.
Delete	Deletes the currently displayed SMS.
Phone number list	Makes a voice call or videophone call to the phone number of the sender of SMS or the phone number displayed in the SMS message, or stores the phone number in the phonebook. <b>To make a voice call/videophone call</b> Select the phone number→  [Left]→"Call" →"YES"→
Copy to UIM/ Copy to Phone	<b>To store the phone number into the phonebook</b> Select the phone number→  [Left]→"Add to phonebook"→Store the phonebook (p.42)
Copy to UIM/ Copy to Phone	Copies the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or copies the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

## NOTE

- Since you cannot protect SMS, be careful when you delete an SMS or all the SMS.
- You cannot reply to an SMS when the sender has withheld his or her caller ID (User unset) or is sending from a payphone (Payphone) or a phone that does not support Caller ID Notification (Not support).
- You cannot reply to or forward an SMS report (p.92) and Voice Mail notices. For more details of Voice Mail notices, refer to the "Network Services Operation Guide".

## Function menu (sent SMS detail screen)

- While the **sent SMS detail screen** is displayed, press  $\odot$ [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Send	Sends SMS.
Edit	Edits and sends SMS. Edit the address or message body → $\odot$ [Left]→"Send"
Delete	Deletes the currently displayed SMS.

## NOTE

- Since you cannot protect SMS, be careful when you delete an SMS.

- **Checking the number of messages of the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM)**

1 On the standby screen  $\odot$ [Right]→"SMS"

2 "No. of messages"

The remaining number of messages (free space) and the available number of messages (total capacity) of the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM) are displayed.

## <Set SMS>

# Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings

1 On the standby screen  $\odot$ [Right]→"SMS"

2 "SMS settings"→Select any item

Item	Description	
SMS center select	Specifies whether the FOMA terminal uses the DoCoMo SMS Center or another provider's SMS center for SMS.	
	NTT DoCoMo	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
	User setting	Uses another provider's SMS center. Enter the SMS center address
	Reset	Deletes the "User setting" data and resets the setting to "NTT DoCoMo". Enter your security code→"YES"
Select storage	Select the destination of SMS between the "Phone" and "UIM".	

## NOTE

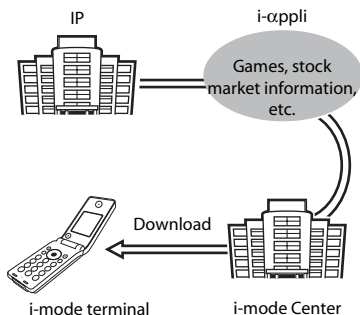
- There is normally no need to change the settings of "SMS center select".
- If the entered SMS Center address includes "#" or "\*": you cannot select "International".

# i- $\alpha$ ppli

What is an i- $\alpha$ ppli? .....	98
Downloading i- $\alpha$ ppli from Sites.....	98
Running i- $\alpha$ ppli .....	99
Pre-installed software.....	99
Setting i- $\alpha$ ppli.....	99
Setting $\alpha$ Display light.....	100
Setting $\alpha$ Vibrator .....	100
Viewing the info on Auto start failure .....	100
Upgrading i- $\alpha$ ppli.....	100

## What is an i-appli?

By downloading i-appli from sites, you can make your i-mode-compliant FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) even easier to use. For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal and play them or download an i-appli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There are also mapping i-appli that allow you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth. For details of using i-appli and its notifications, refer to the "i-mode User's Manual".



## Downloading i-appli from Sites

You can download software from an i-mode site and run the software on your FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 50 downloaded software applications. However, depending on the application data, the actual number of downloadable i-appli programs varies.

### 1 While a site is displayed→Select software

When you see the message "Completed" after downloading, press ●

#### ■ To interrupt data downloading in progress

While downloading→●

#### ■ When a software setting screen appears

Set the software→●

Network set→p.99

### 2 "YES"

The downloaded software launches.

#### ■ To prevent the software launching

"NO"

#### ■ To interrupt the software launching in progress


While the software launching →●

### NOTE

- You may not be able to download software depending on sites or the data size of the software.
- When the saved software is full, a message appears whether to download new software after deleting some of the registered software, and if the download fails due to the poor signal quality, etc. you cannot retrieve the software once you have deleted.
- Some software applications use the FOMA terminal to communicate when running, but can also be set in "Network set" (p.99) to run without communicating.
- During downloading, a message may appear asking whether to send the FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers. Select "YES" to start the download. When this happens, your FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result. Select "NO" to cancel downloading.

## Running i-αppli

1 On the standby screen  [Left]

→  (i-αppli) → "Software list"


The Software list screen appears.


2 Select a software to launch


● Quitting i-αppli

 → "YES"

### Function menu (Software list screen)

● While the Software list screen is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Upgrade	"Upgrading i-αppli " → p.100
Delete	Deletes the highlighted software.
Delete selected	Deletes multiple software. Select the checkbox of software to delete →  [Left] → "Delete" → "YES"
Delete all	Deletes all the registered software. Enter your security code → "YES"
Software info	Displays the details of the i-αppli software such as the name, version, file size, etc.
Certificate	Displays the owner and issuer of the certificate.
Network set	If the software performs communication, set whether or not to allow the software to perform network connection. Setting to "Confirm every session" enables you to decide online or offline communication every time you launch an i-αppli.

Item	Description
Auto start set	If the software can be launched automatically, sets whether or not to allow the software to start automatically at the interval specified by the software. · As for the interval of Auto start set, refer to its software information.
Disp. soft info	Sets whether or not to display the software information when downloaded.
Trace info	Displays the software trace information. <a href="#">To delete the trace information</a>  [Left] → "YES"
System info	Displays the software storage (Free/Used) information.

## Pre-installed software

The FOMA terminal comes with 2 software applications, "ページワン" (Pageone) and "ボトルレター" (Bottle Letter), pre-installed at the time of purchase.

### ページワン (Pageone)

This is a game as same as the playing card game "Page One". Throw off your five cards dealt at the beginning to match the mark or number of the card placed on the table. The winner is the one who plays his/her five cards out first.

1 On the standby screen

 [Left] →  (i-αppli)

→ "Software list"

2 "ページワン (Pageone)"

3 

The game launches.

■ [To display how to play in detail](#)

 [Left]



## ボトルレター (Bottle Letter)

This is a game to connect channels to deliver a letter in bottle from the start to the goal.

### 1 On the standby screen

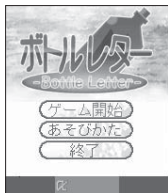
- [Left] →  (i- $\alpha$ ppli)  
→ "Software list"

### 2 "ボトルレター (Bottle Letter)"

### 3 "ゲーム開始 (Start game)"

The game launches.


- To display how to play in detail  
"あそびかた (How to play)"



## Setting i- $\alpha$ ppli

### Setting $\alpha$ Display light

### 1 On the standby screen ○ [Left]


-  (i- $\alpha$ ppli) → " $\alpha$ Display light"

### 2 Select "Depend on system" or "Depend on software"

If you select "Depend on system", the display illuminates according to the specified setting in FOMA terminal "Power save mode" (p.50). Select "Depend on software", if you want it illuminate according to the software setting.

## Setting $\alpha$ Vibrator

### 1 On the standby screen ○ [Left]

-  (i- $\alpha$ ppli) → " $\alpha$ Vibrator"

### 2 Select "Depend on system" or "Depend on software"

If you select "Depend on system", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate regardless of the specified settings in "Vibrator" (p.48). Select "Depend on software", if you want it vibrate according to the software setting.

## Viewing the info on Auto start failure

### 1 On the standby screen ○ [Left]

-  (i- $\alpha$ ppli) → "Auto start failure"

Displays the details if the software failed to launch automatically at the specified time in "Auto start set" (p.99).

- To delete the Auto start failure  
○ [Left] → "YES"

## Upgrading i- $\alpha$ ppli

You can upgrade already downloaded software when a new version is available on the site.

### 1 Function menu for Software list screen (p.99)



- "Upgrade" → "YES"

# Data Box

<b>Displaying Still Images</b> .....	<My picture>	102
<b>Playing Movies/i-motion</b> .....	<imotion>	104
Operation during the i-motion playback.....		106
<b>Playing Melodies</b> .....	<Melody>	106
Operation during the melody playback.....		108

## Displaying Still Images

Still images shot with the built-in camera or downloaded and stored from websites or mail are categorized into the folders of My picture under the Data box.

1 On the standby screen  [Left]  
→  (Data box) → "My picture"

2 Select a folder

The image list screen appears.

3 Select an image

The My picture screen appears.

■ To switch to large size


Press 






● Storage capacity and number of items in Data box

In Data box, total of 13 MByte image, i-motion and melody data including the preinstalled data can be stored. The maximum number of items that can be stored in Data box is 500 items including the preinstalled data.


### Function menu (image list screen)

● While the image list screen is displayed, press  [Left] to select the function menu.

Item	Description
Rename	Edits the file name/title of the highlighted image. To edit the file name "Edit file name" → Edit the file name →  To edit the title "Edit title" → Edit the title → 
Display image	Displays the highlighted image.

Item	Description	
Set as stand-by	Sets the highlighted image as the standby screen.	
Image info	Displays detailed information of the image such as the file name and file size.	
Compose message	Composes a mail with the highlighted image attached. → p.78	
Delete	Deletes the highlighted image.	
Delete all	Deletes all the images in the folder. Enter your security code → "YES"	
Delete selected	Deletes multiple images. Select the image to delete →  [Left] → "Delete selected" → "YES"	
Sort	Sorts images according to the specified criteria.	
	Chronological ↑	Sorts from the latest saved file.
	Chronological ↓	Sorts from the oldest saved file.
	By title ↑	Displays in order of titles [Number (123) → Alphabet (ABC) → Hiragana (あいう) → Kanji].
	By title ↓	Displays in reverse order of titles [Kanji → Hiragana (ういあ) → Alphabet (CBA) → Number (321)].
	By size ↑	Displays from the largest file size.
By size ↓	Displays from the smallest file size.	
List setting	Sets the image list display.	
	Title name	Switches to the list of title names.
	Picture	Switches to thumbnail display.

## Function menu (My picture screen)

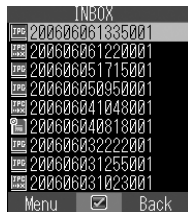
- While the **My picture screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to select the function menu.

Item	Description
Slide show	Displays a slide show of the images in the current folder.
Set as stand-by	Sets the displayed image as the standby screen.
Image info	Displays the detailed information of the image such as the file name and file size.
Compose message	Composes a mail with the displayed image attached. → p.78
Delete	Deletes the displayed image.

### NOTE

- If you set an image larger than the standby screen size (178 × 180 dots) as the standby, the whole image is displayed after size reduction without changing the dimension ratio. If the set image is smaller than the standby screen, it will appear in its actual size.
- The available functions vary by the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.
- You cannot delete, or edit the titles of the preinstalled images.
- Some images cannot be set as the standby screen.
- You cannot compose a mail with an image if it is forbidden to output the image from the FOMA terminal.

## Guide to the Title list and Picture list



### Title list






The titles of nine images are listed on the screen. Icons show the image type.



### Picture list

Four images appear as thumbnail, and the title and the image type (icon) of the selected image also appear.

### Image type icons

Icon	Description
	JPEG-formatted image
	GIF-formatted image
	JPEG-formatted image with file restriction
	GIF-formatted image with file restriction
	Image to which the FOMA card (UIM) operation restriction applies

### Checking the storage status of Data box

On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Data box) → "Storage info"

The usage status of My picture, i-motion and melody, and the total usage status and free space of Data box appear.

## Playing Movies/i-motion

Movies that you have shot or i-motion downloaded from i-mode site or Internet website can be played in imotion under Data box.

- "Storage capacity and number of items in Data box" → p.102
- "Downloading i-motion from sites to play or save" → p.72
- "Checking the storage status of Data box" → p.103

### 1 On the standby screen [Left]

→  (Data box) → "imotion"


### 2 Select a folder

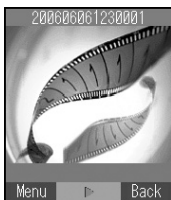
The **movie list screen** appears.

### 3 Select a movie


The **i-motion screen** appears to play the movie.



When the playback ends, the **i-motion stopped screen** appears.


Pressing  while playback will pause the playback and the **i-motion pause screen** appears.



### Function menu (movie list screen)

- While the **movie list screen** is displayed, press  [Left] to select the function menu.

Item	Description
Rename	Edits the file name or title of the highlighted movie. <a href="#">To edit the file name</a> "Edit file name" → Edit the file name →  <a href="#">To edit the title</a> "Edit title" → Edit the title → 
Play	Plays the highlighted movie.

Item	Description
imotion info	Displays detailed information of the movie such as the file name and file size.
Compose message	Composes a mail with the highlighted movie attached. → p.78
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted movie.
Delete all	Deletes all the movies in the folder. Enter your security code → "YES"
Delete selected	Deletes multiple movies. Select the movie to delete →  [Left] → "Delete selected" → "YES"
Sort	Sorts movies according to the specified criteria.
Chronological ↑	Sorts from the latest saved file.
Chronological ↓	Sorts from the oldest saved file.
By title ↑	Displays in order of titles [Number (123) → Alphabet (ABC) → Hiragana (あいう) → Kanji].
By title ↓	Displays in reverse order of titles [Kanji → Hiragana (ういあ) → Alphabet (CBA) → Number (321)].
By size ↑	Displays from the largest file size.
By size ↓	Displays from the smallest file size.
List setting	Sets the movie list display.
Title name	Switches to the list of title names.
Picture	Switches to preview display.

## Function menu (i-motion stopped (pause) screen)

- While the **i-motion stopped (pause) screen** is displayed, press **[Left]** to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Play	If the playback is paused, the i-motion is replayed from the paused point.
Slide show	Plays all the movies in the folder continuously.
Fast forward	Fast forwards the movie. Returning to the normal playback Press <b>to pause</b> → <b>[Left]</b> → "Play"
Rewind play	Rewinds the i-motion. Returning to the normal playback Press <b>to pause</b> → <b>[Left]</b> → "Play"
Stop	Stops the i-motion playback and returns to the i-motion stopped (pause) screen.
i-motion info	Displays detailed information of the movie such as the file name and file size.
Compose message	Composes a mail with the highlighted movie attached. → p.78
Delete	Deletes the highlighted movie.

### NOTE

- You cannot compose a mail with an i-motion if it has playback restriction or is forbidden to output from the FOMA terminal.
- During fast forward, the movie playback is stopped and the sound is muted.

## Guide to the Title list and Picture list



### Title list

The titles of the nine movies are listed on the screen. Icons show the movie type.



### Picture list

The screen shows a preview screen of a movie, and the title and movie type of the selected movie appear.

### Movie type icons

Icon	Description
	MP4 movie/i-motion
	MP4 i-motion with playback restriction (playback possible)
	MP4 i-motion with playback restriction (playback impossible)
	Movie/i-motion with file restriction
	Movie/i-motion to which the FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction applies

## Operation during the i-motion playback

You can perform the following operations during i-motion playback.

Operation key	Action
⏸	Pauses/resumes playback
🔊	Adjusts the volume by five levels from level 0 to 4 (the volume level does not appear).
⏮	Plays the previous or next movie/i-motion
⏩ [Left]	Fast forwards/returns to normal playback · Playback and the sound stops during fast forward.
⏮ more than one second	Fast rewinds · Letting go of the key returns to normal playback.
⏩ [Right]	Ends
⏩ more than one second	Fast forwards · Letting go of the key returns to normal playback.

<Melody>

## Playing Melodies

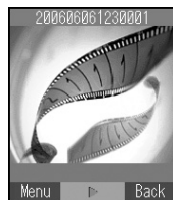
The preinstalled melodies, sound effects or the melodies downloaded from sites can be played in the Melody folder under Data box.

- "Storage capacity and number of items in Data box" → p.102
- "Checking the storage status of Data box" → p.103

**1** On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Data box) → "Melody"

**2** Select a folder  
The melody list screen appears.

**3** Select a melody  
The melody screen appears to play the melody.  
When the playback ends, the melody stopped screen appears.



## Function menu (melody list screen)

- While the **melody list screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Rename	Edits the file name or title of the highlighted melody. To edit the file name "Edit file name"→Edit the file name→ To edit the title "Edit title" →Edit the title→
Play	Plays the highlighted melody.
Set as ring tone	Sets the highlighted melody as the ring tone. Select an item
Compose message	Composes a mail with the highlighted melody attached. →p.78
Melody info	Displays detailed information of the melody such as the file name and file size.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted melody.
Delete all	Deletes all the melodies in the folder. Enter your security code→"YES"
Delete selected	Deletes multiple melodies. Select the checkbox of the melody to delete→ [Left]→"Delete selected"→"YES"

Item	Description	
Sort	Sorts melodies according to the specified criteria.	
	Chronological ↑	Sorts from the latest saved file.
	Chronological ↓	Sorts from the oldest saved file.
	By title ↑	Displays in order of titles [Number (123)→Alphabet (ABC)→Hiragana (あいう)→Kanji].
	By title ↓	Displays in reverse order of titles [Kanji→Hiragana (ういあ)→Alphabet (CBA)→Number (321)].
	By size ↑	Displays from the largest file size.
By size ↓	Displays from the smallest file size.	

## Function menu (melody stopped screen)

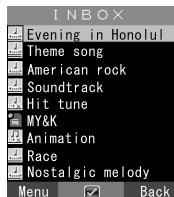
- While the **melody stopped screen** is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Set as ring tone	Sets the highlighted melody as the ring tone. Select an item
Compose message	Composes a mail with the highlighted melody attached. →p.78
Property	Displays detailed information of the melody such as the file name and file size.
Delete	Deletes the selected melody.

### NOTE

- The available function vary by the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.
- You cannot delete, or edit the titles of the preinstalled melodies.
- You cannot compose a mail with a melody if it is forbidden to output the melody from the FOMA terminal.






## Guide to the Melody list



### Melody list





The titles of the nine melodies are listed on the screen. Icons show the melody type.

### Melody type icons

Icon	Description
	MFI-formatted melody
	SMF-formatted melody
	MFI-formatted melody with file restriction
	SMF-formatted melody with file restriction
	Melody to which the FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction applies

### Operation during the melody playback

You can perform the following operations during melody playback.

Operation key	Action
	Pauses/resumes playback
	Adjusts the volume · Five volume levels from 0 to 4 are available. (The volume level is not displayed.)
	Plays the previous or next melody
 [Right]	Ends

# Other Useful Functions

<b>Multi Access</b> .....	<Multi Access>	110
Multi access combination patterns .....		110
<b>Using Schedule Function</b> .....	<Schedule>	111
Viewing the scheduled events.....		111
Adding schedule entries .....		111
<b>Setting the Alarm Clock</b> .....	<Alarm clock>	112
<b>Using Calculator</b> .....	<Calculator>	113
<b>Composing Text Memo</b> .....	<Text memo>	113
<b>Using Common Phrases</b> .....	<Common phrases>	114
<b>Storing Frequently Used Words</b> .....	<Own dictionary>	114
<b>Using a Earphone/Microphone with Switch</b> .....		115

## Multi Access

Multi Access is a function that enables you to make voice calls, perform packet communication and use SMS at the same time. This enables you to receive SMS messages during a voice call or answer a voice call during the i-mode session.

### Multi access combination patterns

The table shows the possible main combination patterns for the multi access:

Current communication	Newly established communication		Voice calls		Videophone calls		i-mode mail		SMS	
	Making	Receiving	Making	Receiving	Sending	Receiving	Sending	Receiving	Sending	Receiving
During voice call	△*1	△*1	—	×	—	×	—	×	—	○
During videophone call	—	×	—	×	—	×	—	×	—	○
During i-mode	○*2	○	○*2	×	○*3	△*4	—	—	—	○
During packet communication with PC	—	×	—	×	—	×	—	×	—	○
SMS receiving/sending	—	○	—	○	—	○	—	○	—	△*5

○ : Can be activated. × : Cannot be activated.

△ : Can be activated depending on situation. — : Functionally incompatible.

\* 1 : If you have subscribed to "Call Waiting", you can hold the current voice call to make or receive a call.

\* 2 : You can only make a voice/videophone call when you use the Phone To/AV Phone To function.

\* 3 : You can only send an i-mode mail when you use the Mail To function.

\* 4 : The FOMA terminal starts receiving the new i-mode mail after it terminates the i-mode communication. When it is during downloading, the FOMA terminal starts receiving the i-mode mail after the downloading is complete.

\* 5 : The FOMA terminal starts receiving new SMS after it terminates the current communication.

#### NOTE

- Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- You cannot use multi access during a videophone call or packet communication with a PC. However, only SMS can be received simultaneously.

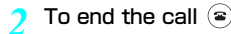
#### Receiving a voice call during i-mode communication

If you receive a voice call while you are using i-mode, receiving or sending i-mode mail, the voice call reception screen appears and you can answer the call without ending the i-mode session.

- You cannot answer videophone calls during i-mode session.



The voice call reception screen appears and you can answer the call.



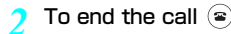
The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

#### Receiving a voice/videophone call during SMS operation

If you receive a voice/videophone call while you are receiving or sending an SMS message, the voice/videophone call reception screen appears and you can answer the voice/videophone call without ending the SMS receiving/sending.



The voice/videophone call reception screen appears and you can answer the call.



#### Receiving an i-mode mail during SMS operation

If you receive an i-mode mail while you are receiving or sending an SMS message, the i-mode mail receiving screen appears and you can check the i-mode mail without aborting the SMS receiving or sending.

#### Receiving an SMS (Short Message) during communication

If you receive an SMS message during a voice call or i-mode communication, the FOMA terminal continues to display the current communication screen. "SMS" (orange) icon lights without a ring tone to notify you of the received SMS. Check the received SMS after the current communication ends.

## Using Schedule Function

Setting a schedule sounds the alarm tone at the specified date and time and displays the alarm message to notify you of the schedule. Stored schedules can be quickly checked on the calendar.

- You can store up to 60 schedule events.
- You can store multiple scheduled events for the same day.

### Viewing the scheduled events

#### 1 On the standby screen

○ [Left] →  (Tools) → "Schedule"

The Schedule screen appears.

#### 2 Select the date

The Schedule list screen appears.

#### 3 Select the scheduled event

The Schedule details screen appears.

### Function menu (Schedule screen)

- While the Schedule screen is displayed, press ○ [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
New	Registers a new schedule.
Select date	Displays the scheduled events for the highlighted date as a list. ⏱ to select date → ● → Check the date on the schedule screen → ●
Schedule list	Displays all the scheduled events stored in the FOMA terminal as a list.
No. of schedule	Displays the schedule storage status.

### Function menu (Schedule list screen)

- While the Schedule list screen is displayed, press ○ [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Details	Displays the details of the highlighted event.
New	Sets a new event.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted event.
Delete all	Deletes all the scheduled events stored. Enter your security code → "YES"

### Adding schedule entries

#### 1 On the standby screen

○ [Left] →  (Tools) → "Schedule"

#### 2 ○ [Left] → "New"

#### 3 Set the following items

Item	Description
Date	Enter the starting date for the scheduled event. ⏱ to select Year / Mon / Day and ⏱ to select the value → ●
Time	Sets the time the schedule will start. When "Time format" is set to "12 h" ⏱ to select time (12 hours)/minute/AM or PM and ⏱ to select the number → ● When "Time format" is set to "24 h" ⏱ to select time (24 hours)/minute and ⏱ to select the number → ●
Memo	Enter the contents of the scheduled event.
Alarm tone	Specifies the alarm notification settings. · You can check the alarm tone by pressing ○ [Left] while selecting.

Item	Description	
Repeat	Sets the repetition of scheduled event.	
	1 time	Sets the event only for the specified date and time.
	Daily	Sets the event to repeat every day on the specified time.
	Select day	Sets the event to repeat every week on the same day (Sun to Sat) and time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the date you set, the event is repeated every week on the same day and time.</li> </ul>
ON/OFF	Sets whether or not to notify when the starting time is reached. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you set "OFF", no scheduled event is notified when the starting time is reached.</li> </ul>	

#### 4 [Left]

#### ■ Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored scheduled events by taking notes. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Transfer Software (p.157) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, change etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the details of the schedule events. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the scheduled event details just in case.

#### <Alarm clock>

## Setting the Alarm Clock

- You can store up to 3 alarm settings.

### 1 On the standby screen

- [Left] → (Tools) → "Alarm clock"

### 2 Select an item to set

### 3 Set the following items

Item	Description	
Time	Sets the time when the alarm will sound. When "Time format" is set to "12 h" to select time (12 hours)/minute/AM or PM and  to select the number → When "Time format" is set to "24 h" to select time (24 hours)/minute and  to select the number →	
Repeat	Sets the number of alarm repetitions.	
	1 time	Sounds the alarm only once at the specified time .
	Daily	Sounds the alarm every day at the specified time .
Select day	Sounds the alarm every week on the specified day (Sun to Sat). Select day →  [Left]	
Alarm tone	Select the alarm tone. · You can check the alarm tone by pressing  [Left] while selecting.	
Name	Names the alarm setting.	
ON/OFF	Sets whether to sound or not. · If you set "OFF", no alarm tone sounds when the starting time is reached.	

#### NOTE

- If the FOMA terminal is powered off, the alarm will not sound at the specified time.

## Using Calculator Function

The FOMA terminal performs the four basic arithmetic operations (+ (addition), - (subtraction), × (multiplication), ÷ (division)).







- Up to 9-digit number can be displayed excluding - (minus) and decimal places.
- The result number consisting of more than 9 figures is displayed as "E".

### 1 On the standby screen

● [Left] →  (Tools) → "Calculator"

### 2 Perform calculation

<Example: To calculate "23 + 57">

 (2) →  (3) →  (+) →  (5) →  (7) →  (=)

#### NOTE

- If you press ◂[Left] before performing the four arithmetic operations, the figures being input will be cleared. If you press ◂[Left] after the performance, all the figures being calculated will be cleared.

## Composing Text Memo

You can use the FOMA terminal to write short messages, etc. as text memos.

- You can store up to 9 text memos.

### 1 On the standby screen

● [Left] →  (Tools) → "Text memo"

The Text memo screen appears.

### 2 "<Not recorded>" → ●

- To check the details of the currently stored text memo

Select an item to check in details

- You can edit the text memo by pressing ◂[Left] while viewing.

### 3 Compose a text memo

#### ■ Important

- It is recommended to back up the text memos by taking notes. You can also save the data to your PC by using the Data Transfer Software (p.157) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, change etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of the text memo. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the text memos just in case.



#### Function memo (Text memo list screen)

- While the Text memo list screen is displayed, press ◂[Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
View	Displays the content of the text memo. · You can edit the text memo by pressing ◂[Left] while viewing.
Edit	Edit the text memo.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail and sends it out. The content of the text memo appears as the text of the message → p.78
Delete	Deletes the highlighted memo.
Delete all	Deletes all the text memos. Enter your security code → "YES"

## Using Common Phrases Function

You can retrieve from the Text entry (edit) screen if you store common phrases in advance. Common phrases are stored in 3 folders. Folder 1 and 2 contain 9 preset fixed common phrases respectively. You can store phrases created by yourself up to 9 in Folder 3.


- 1 On the standby screen  [Left]  
→  (Tools) → "Common phrases"

The Common phrases folder list screen appears.

- 2 Select a folder  
The Common phrases list screen appears.


- 3 "<Not stored>" → Enter a common phrase

### Function menu (Common phrases folder list screen)

- While the **Common phrases folder list** screen is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Edit folder name	Changes the folder name.
Reset name	Returns to the folder name at default setting.

### Function menu (Common phrases list screen)

- While the **Common phrases list** screen is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Edit common phrase	Edit the highlighted common phrase.
Delete	Deletes the common phrase highlighted.
Delete all	Deletes all common phrases. Enter your security code → "YES"



### NOTE

- You can also edit the preset fixed common phrases in the Folder 1 and 2.
- If you delete any or all the fixed common phrases, they will be reverted to the default setting.


## Storing Frequently Used Words

You can recall those words by entering and converting the reading in the Text entry (edit) screen if you store frequently used words in an own dictionary.

- Own dictionary holds up to 100 items.
- A word can contain up to 10 full-pitch and 20 half-pitch.  
A reading can contain up to 8 full-pitch hiragana characters.

- 1 On the standby screen  
 [Left] →  (Tools) → "Own dictionary"


The Own dictionary list screen appears.

- 2  [Left] → "New"

### ■ To check the stored words


Select the word to check


The **Own dictionary detail** screen appears and you can check the details of the word.

- You can edit the word by pressing  when the own dictionary detail screen appears.

- 3 Enter a word → Enter its reading

### Function menu (Own dictionary list/detail screen)

- While the **Own dictionary list/detail** screen is displayed, press  [Left] to display the function menu

Item	Description
New	Stores a new word.
Edit	Edits the stored word and its reading.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted word.
Delete selected	Deletes multiple own dictionaries. Select the words to delete →  [Left]
Delete all	Deletes all the own dictionaries. Enter your security code → "YES"

## Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch

You can receive a call using a switch of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.

- To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to the FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone terminal cover and insert the earphone/microphone with switch into the socket.  
→p.18
- Do not wrap the cord of the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around the FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the cord of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to the FOMA terminal may generate noise.

### Using the switch to accept a call


#### 1 When you receive a call, press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone

Pressing the switch with the FOMA terminal folded also enables you to answer the call.

##### ■ When accepting a voice call

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and enables you to answer the call.

##### ■ When accepting a videophone call

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and enables you to answer the call using your substitute image. You can send the camera image by pressing [Left] to access the "Send camera image" / "Substitutive image".

#### 2 Press and hold the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer when you finish talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and ends the call.

### Note

- If you set "Automatic answer" to "ON", you can accept an incoming call automatically without having to press the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch→p.52
- When you have a call, the ring tone sounds for around 20 seconds from the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch and then from the FOMA terminal subsequently.
- You cannot make the FOMA terminal call handsfree even if you press and hold the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for more than 1 second during the call. Note that if you press the switch more than 1 second during a call, the call will be disconnected.
- Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to automatically accept a call.

**【MEMO】**

# Network Services

<b>Available Network Services</b> .....	<b>1 18</b>
<b>Voice Mail Service</b> .....	<b>&lt;Voice mail&gt; 1 18</b>
Activating the Voice Mail service .....	1 18
Playing recorded messages .....	1 19
Checking for recorded messages .....	1 19
Changing your Voice Mail service settings using audio guidance.....	1 19
<b>Call Waiting</b> .....	<b>&lt;Call waiting&gt; 1 19</b>
Activating Call Waiting .....	1 19
Putting the current call on hold to answer a newly received call .....	1 19
Ending the current call to answer a newly received call .....	1 20
Putting the current call on hold to make a new call to someone else ....	1 20
<b>Call Forwarding Service</b> .....	<b>&lt;Call forwarding&gt; 1 20</b>
Activating Call Forwarding service .....	1 20
Forwarding a call to Voice Mail service center when the forwarding number is busy.....	1 21
<b>Bar Nuisance Calls Service</b> .....	<b>&lt;Bar nuisance call&gt; 1 21</b>
Registering the last answered call for call barring.....	1 21
<b>Adding and Using Services</b> .....	<b>&lt;Additional service&gt; 1 21</b>
Adding a new service .....	1 21
Using the newly added service .....	1 22
Adding response message .....	1 22
<b>Service Dialing No.</b> .....	<b>&lt;Service dialing No.&gt; 1 22</b>

## Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to various DoCoMo network services.

You can use services either from the menus or the dial control (entering number) of your FOMA terminal.

In this manual, how to use the following services from the menus is described.

Service name	Description	Sub- scription	Usage fee
Notify Caller ID→ p.28	Provides your FOMA terminal phone number to the caller when you make a call.	Not required	Free
Voice Mail →p.118	Stores caller messages on your behalf.	Required	Charged
Call Waiting →p.119	Enables you to answer a new call while you are on a call.	Required	Charged
Call Forward -ing→p.120	Forwards incoming calls to a preset number.	Required	Free
Bar Nuisance Call→p.121	Automatically bars calls from nuisance callers or repeated wrong number calls.	Required	Free

For Public mode, refer to p.31, and for Public mode (Power off), see p.33.

For more details on using other services by the dial control (entering number) and the network services, see the "Network Services Operation Guide".

- When DoCoMo makes a new network service available, you can add the new service by "Additional service".
- You can add a part of the dial control (entering number) as an "Additional service".
- "Service dialing No." provides a quick and simple way to contact the DoCoMo general help desk and service counter for information on faults, etc.
- To use the network services overseas, see "Using Network Services Overseas" (p.138) for details.

### NOTE

- "Deactivate" is not for unsubscribing the services such as Voice Mail, Call Forwarding, etc.



<Voice mail>

## Voice Mail Service

If you receive a voice call when the FOMA terminal is out of service or turned off, this service sends an answer message to the caller and stores the caller's message on your behalf.

- 20 messages of up to three minutes each can be recorded.
- Messages are stored for up to 72 hours.

### Activating the Voice Mail service

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service) → "Voice mail"

2 "Activate" → "YES"

■ To deactivate the Voice Mail service

"Deactivate" → "YES"

■ To check the Voice Mail service settings

"Status request"

■ To set the time to activate the Voice Mail service

"Set ringing time" → Enter ringing time (0 to 120 seconds)

■ To have the FOMA terminal ring when your recorded messages increase


"Msg. notification" → "YES"

When the number of recorded messages increases, a message "Voice mail : x" (x is the number of messages) is displayed on the standby screen.

### NOTE

- When you activate the "Call Forwarding service", the Voice Mail service is automatically deactivated.



## Playing recorded messages


1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service)  
→ "Voice Mail"

2 "Play messages" → "YES"

The FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center.  
Then play your recorded messages by following the audio instructions.

## Checking for recorded messages



1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service)  
→ "Check messages"

After checking for messages, the FOMA terminal displays a message saying that it has finished checking for messages. If you have recorded messages stored at the Voice Mail service center,  appears on the standby screen.

■ To clear  from the standby screen

On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service)  
→ "Voice Mail" → "Erase icon" → "YES"

## Setting your Voice Mail service using audio guidance

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service)  
→ "Voice mail"

2 "Setting" → "YES"



The FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Specify your settings by following the audio instructions.

<Call waiting>

## Call Waiting

The Call Waiting enables you to answer a voice call newly received while you are talking on another voice call. You can also use this service to put your current voice call on hold while you make a voice call to someone else.

## Activating Call Waiting

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service)  
→ "Call waiting"

2 "Activate" → "YES"



■ To deactivate the Call Waiting

"Deactivate" → "YES"

■ To check your Call Waiting settings

Select "Status request"

## Putting the current call on hold to answer a newly received call

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press  or  [Left] → "Answer"


Your initial call is put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

The name and phone number of the current caller and the caller on hold appear on the **Switching calls screen**.

■ To switch the current call and the call on hold


Press 

This puts the current call on hold and switches the call on hold to the current call.


· You can switch between the 2 calls by pressing 

■ To switch to hands-free

Press 


· Each time you press , you can switch between the hands-free and normal call.

## Function menu (switching calls screen)

- While the **Switching calls screen** is displayed, select  [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
Switch	Switches between the current call and the call on hold.
End current call	Ends the current call, and returns to the call on hold.
End held call	Ends the call on hold.
Mute/Resume	Mutes your voice.
Refer phonebook	Select the phonebook operation of the current call from "Add to phonebook" or "Search phonebook" → p.42, 44
Own number	Displays your own number.

## Ending the current call to answer a newly received call



- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press 

The current call ends and the ring tone sounds.

- 2  or 

The FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

## Putting the current call on hold to make a new call to someone else

- 1  [Left] during a call → "Voice dialing"  
→ Dial another phone number → 

The **Switching calls screen** appears, and the initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call.



## <Call forwarding>

### Call Forwarding Service

If you receive a voice or videophone call when the FOMA terminal is out of service or turned off, the Call Forwarding service forwards the call to a previously registered forwarding number.

- You can register only one forwarding number.

### Activating Call Forwarding service

- 1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service) → "Call forwarding"

- 2 "Activate"

- To deactivate the Call Forwarding service

"Deactivate" → "YES"

- To change the forwarding number only

"Change fwd No" → Select "New" to enter the phone number, select "Search phonebook" to set from the phonebook → Select "Change fwd No" if the Call Forwarding service is already activated, and "CHG No.+Activate" if the service is deactivated

- To check your Call Forwarding settings

Select "Status request"

- 3 Set the forwarding number and ringing time

- To directly enter the forwarding number

"Register fwd No" → "New" → Enter the phone number

- To set the forwarding number from the phonebook

"Register fwd No" → "Search phonebook"  
→ Search the phonebook → Search the number

- To set the ringing time

"Register fwd No" → "Set ringing time" → Enter ringing time (0 to 120 seconds)



- 4 "Activate" → "YES"

#### NOTE

- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.
- When you set the "Voice Mail service" to "Activate", the Call Forwarding service is automatically set to "Deactivate".

## Forwarding a call to Voice Mail service center when the forwarding number is busy

- The forwarding number must subscribe to the Voice Mail service and set "Activate".

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service) → "Call forwarding"

2 "At fwd party busy" → "YES"

### <Bar nuisance call>



## Bar Nuisance Calls Service

The Bar Nuisance Calls service enables you to register specific phone numbers, such as those which make nuisance calls or unwanted sales calls, so that you do not receive any further calls from those numbers. Once you have registered a number, calls from that number are automatically rejected by the network and the call rejection message is sent to the caller.

Bar Nuisance Calls service can register the phone number of the last answered call for call barring.

- You can register up to 30 barred numbers.
- You cannot check your list of barred callers. It is recommended to make a written note of the phone numbers you have registered as barred callers.

## Registering the last answered call for call barring

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service) → "Bar nuisance call"

2 "Register caller"

The phone number of the last answered call is added to your list of barred callers.

- To delete the barred number that was registered last time  
"Delete recent entry" → "YES"
- To delete all the barred numbers in the list  
"Delete all entries" → Enter your security code → "YES"

### <Additional service>



## Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo provides new and additional network services, this function allows you to add the new services on your FOMA terminal.

- You can add up to 10 new network services.
- You can also add a part of the dial control (entering number).

### Adding a new service


When a new network service is provided, you will be notified of the "number" and "service code" that you need in order to use the new service. You can add the new services using the number or code.

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Service) → "Additional service"

2 "Additional service"

3 "<Not stored>" →  [Left] → "Add new service"

#### ■ To change the service setting

Select the service to edit →  [Left] → "Edit"

#### ■ To delete a service

Select the service to delete →  [Left] → "Delete this" → "YES"

#### ■ To delete all services

 [Left] → "Delete all" → Enter your security code → "YES"

4 Enter a service name

5 Select the connection method

#### ■ To connect by entering number


"Enter number" → Enter the number consisting of up to 4 digits

#### ■ To connect by USSD (Service code)

"Enter USSD number" → Enter the number consisting of up to 40 digits

6 "YES"


## Using the newly added service

- 1 On the standby screen  $\odot$  [Left]  $\rightarrow$   (Service)  
 $\rightarrow$  "Additional service"
- 2 "Additional service"
- 3 Select a service  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$

## Adding response message

When using your "USSD (service code)" to access an added service, you can store response messages for commands posted from the network.


- You can store up to 10 response messages.

- 1 On the standby screen  $\odot$  [Left]  $\rightarrow$   (Service)  
 $\rightarrow$  "Additional service"
- 2 "Add guidance"
- 3 "<Not stored>"  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$  [Left]  $\rightarrow$  "Add new service"
  - To edit the response message  
Select the service to edit  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$  [Left]  $\rightarrow$  "Edit"
  - To delete a response message  
Select the service to delete  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$  [Left]  $\rightarrow$  "Delete this"  
 $\rightarrow$  "YES"
  - To delete all response messages  
 $\odot$  [Left]  $\rightarrow$  "Delete all"  $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code  $\rightarrow$  "YES"
- 4 Enter a command  $\rightarrow$  Enter a response message  
 $\rightarrow$  "YES"

<Service dialing No.>

## Service Dialing No.

This function provides a quick and simple way to contact the DoCoMo general help desk and service counter for information on faults, etc.

- 1 On the standby screen  $\odot$  [Left]  $\rightarrow$   (Service)  
 $\rightarrow$  "Service dialing No."
- 2 Select any item

Item	Description
ドコモ総合案内・受付	Calls the DoCoMo general information desk.
ドコモ故障問合せ	Calls the DoCoMo service desk.

### NOTE

- The contact numbers for the DoCoMo general information desk and service desk may differ or not be displayed depending on the FOMA card (UIM) you are using.  $\rightarrow$  p.24  
If they are not displayed, it is recommended to store the contact numbers described on the back cover of this manual on the phonebook.

# Data Communication

<b>Data Communication Available for the FOMA.....</b>	<b>124</b>
Operational environment.....	125
Flow Chart for completing the data communication setup.....	126

## Data Communication Available for the FOMA

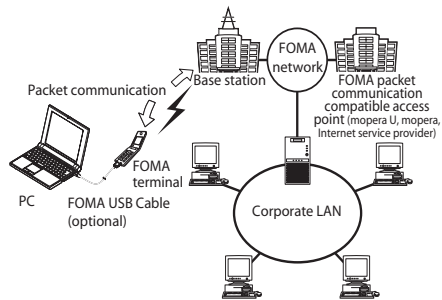
You can connect the FOMA terminal to a PC and perform packet data communication. To use the function, refer to the "Manual for Data Communication" PDF file on the bundled "FOMA N600i CD-ROM".

### ● Packet communication

Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. The communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to the FOMA network and exchange data.

### ■ Performing packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA. Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera".



### NOTE

- You can not perform 64K data communication with the FOMA terminal.
- Data communication performed by packet communication connected to a PC is not available overseas.

## ● Notice before using

### Internet service provider fees

You may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the service provider in addition to the FOMA service fees. Contact your Internet service provider for details.

DoCoMo Internet service "mopera U" or "mopera" is available. "mopera U" is a paid service to which you need to subscribe. "mopera" is a free service and you do not need to subscribe to it.

### User authentication when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authentication (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. The ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the internet service provider or administrator for details.

## Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is shown below:

Item	Description
PC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive</li><li>· USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1)</li><li>· Display resolution of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high. High Color (65,536 colors) recommended</li></ul>
OS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)</li></ul>
Required memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Windows 98, Windows Me : 32M bytes or more**</li><li>· Windows 2000 : 64M bytes or more**</li><li>· Windows XP : 128M bytes or more**</li></ul>
Hard disk space	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· 5M bytes or more of free space**</li></ul>

\*\* : The required memory and necessary hard disk space may depend on the system configuration.

## NOTE

- You may download the "FOMA N600i communication setting file" (drivers) from the DoCoMo website and install it.

## ● Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and PC, are required:

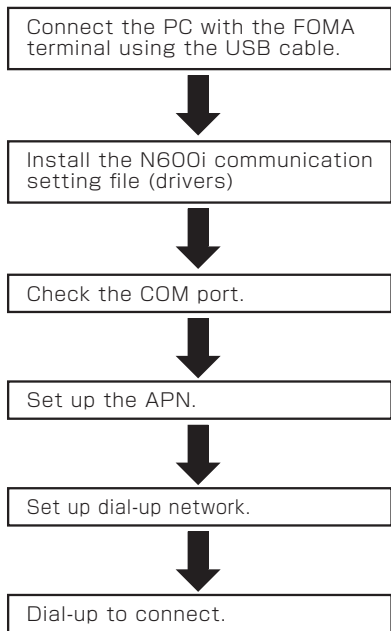
- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Bundled CD-ROM "FOMA N600i CD-ROM"

## NOTE

- Purchase the dedicated "FOMA USB Cable". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

## Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

For the details of the setup, refer to the "Manual for Data Communication" PDF file on "FOMA N600i CD-ROM" that comes with the FOMA N600i.



※ : To use the Internet connecting the FOMA terminal and a PC, "mopera U" (you need to subscribed to) is useful, which supports broadband connection, international roaming, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use "mopera" to which you do not need to subscribe, you can access the Internet immediately.

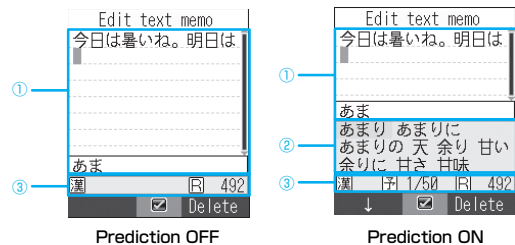
# Entering Text

<b>Text Entry .....</b>	<b>128</b>
Text entry (edit) screen.....	128
Changing the input mode .....	128
<b>Entering Text .....</b>	<b>128</b>
Switching between upper case and lower case.....	129
Deleting text.....	129
<b>Using Predictive Conversion .....</b>	<b>130</b>

## Text Entry

You can enter text on the FOMA terminal for various functions such as composing mail, adding information to phonebook, etc.

### Text entry (edit) screen



- ① Text entry area : Text is entered at the location of ■ (cursor).  
In "Kanji/hiragana input mode", the entered hiragana is displayed below, and when converted and confirmed, the text is entered at the location of ■ (cursor).  
When entering pictographs or symbols, the list of pictographs and symbols is displayed. When a pictograph or symbol is selected, it is entered at the location of ■ (cursor).
- ② Predictive candidate display area : When entering text with "Prediction" set to "ON", the list of predictive candidates is displayed.
- ③ Information display area: The current input mode, upper case or lower case mode, full-pitch or half-pitch mode, and the remaining number of bytes are displayed.


☑ : Kanji/hiragana input mode	☑ : Full pitch mode
☑ : Kana input mode	☑ : Half pitch mode
☑ : Alphabetic input mode	☑ : Lower case mode (No icon appears when "Upper case" is selected.)
☑ : Numeric input mode	☑ : The remaining number of bytes

## Changing the input mode

The FOMA terminal has the Kanji/hiragana, Kana, alphabetic, and numeric input mode.


- When you can change the input mode, "A" is displayed.

### 1 Press in the text entry screen

The input mode changes to the next mode each time you press  in the following sequence: "Alphabetic (full-pitch/half-pitch)" → "Numeric (full-pitch/half-pitch)" → "Kanji/hiragana" → "Kana (full-pitch/half-pitch)".

- Selecting "Half pitch/Full pitch" from the function menu enables you to switch between half pitch and full pitch.

### NOTE

- Pressing  when entering the text switches between upper case and lower case.

## Entering Text

<Example: Entering "9時">

### 1 Keep pressing until the input mode is "Numeric (half-pitch)"



"9" is entered.

### 3 Keep pressing until the input mode is "Kanji/hiragana"

### 4 Press twice → Press once

"じ" is entered below the text display area.



The first kanji candidate is displayed.

■ If the kanji candidate is "時"



"時" is entered. Now the text is entered.

■ If the kanji candidate is other than "時"

Go on to Step 6.

## 6

A list of kanji candidates appears. Hiragana, katakana, and alphabet are included in the conversion candidates.

## 7 Select "時"

\*時\* is entered.

### NOTE

- If you press [Check] before confirming the text, the text changes backwards within the characters assigned to the key.

## Switching between upper case and lower case

You can switch between upper case and lower case while entering the text, regardless of the upper case mode/lower case mode setting.

<Entering "ㄉ">

### 1 $\text{④}$ 3 times → $\text{⑤}$

Every time you press  $\text{④}$ , "ㄉ" and "ㄊ" are switched.

<Entering "ㄊ">

### 1 $\text{①}$ 4 times → $\text{②}$

Every time you press  $\text{①}$ , "ㄊ" and "ㄋ" are switched.

<Entering "ㄋ">

### 1 $\text{②}$ once → $\text{③}$

Every time you press  $\text{②}$ , "ㄋ" and "ㄌ" are switched.

## Deleting text

Press [Right] to delete the text. Depending on the location of the cursor or the way [Right] is pressed, the deleting area is different.

- If [Right] is pressed when there is a character in the cursor location

The character in the cursor location is deleted.

- If [Right] is pressed when there is no character in the cursor location

The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

- If you hold down [Right] for 1 second or longer

All the text after the cursor is deleted.

- If you hold down [Right] for 1 second or longer when there are no characters after the cursor

All the text is deleted.

## Function menu (Text entry screen)

- While the text entry screen is displayed, press [Left] to display the function menu.

Item	Description
PI·SB input mode	Inputs the pictographs and symbols continuously until the list of pictographs and symbols is cleared. [Left] to switch types → [Right] to highlight the pictograph or symbol → [Right] to enter pictographs or symbols continuously → [Right] · Holding down [Left] for 1 second or longer in the text entry screen also changes to PI·SB input mode.
Lower case/Upper case	Switches between lower case and upper case. · You cannot switch cases in "Numeric (full-pitch/half-pitch) input mode".
Full pitch/Half pitch	Switches between full-pitch and half-pitch. · You cannot switch pitches in "Kanji/hiragana input mode".
Copy	Stores the selected range of the characters in the FOMA terminal. To copy a part of the text Move the cursor to the beginning of the text → [Left] → Move the cursor to the end of the text → [Left] To copy all the text [Left] · Up to 2,048 bytes can be copied. · The copied or cut text is stored in the FOMA terminal until the FOMA terminal is turned off.

Item	Description
Cut	Deletes the selected range of the characters and stores in the FOMA terminal. <b>To cut a part of the text</b> Move the cursor to the beginning of the text→ ● →Move the cursor to the end of the text→ ● <b>To cut all the text</b> ● [Left] · Up to 2,048 bytes can be cut. · The copied or cut text is stored in the FOMA terminal until the FOMA terminal is turned off.
Paste	Pastes the stored characters in the FOMA terminal by Copy or Cut. · The types of character which cannot be pasted will be replaced by spaces.
Common phrases	Enters the preset common phrases. Select a folder→Select a phrase · "Common Phrases List"→p.156
Space	Inserts a space (blank).
Line feed	A line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the new line begins. · Holding down ● for 1 second or longer can also enter a new line.
Symbols	The list of symbols is displayed. Select a symbol→ ●
Jump to beginning	Moves the ■ (cursor) to the beginning of sentence.
Jump to end	Moves the ■ (cursor) to the end of sentence.
Kuten code	Enters a character corresponding the Kuten code by entering 4-digit "kuten" code. · When the input mode is "Kanji/hiragana", pressing ● for 1 second or longer also changes to Kuten code. · Kuten code list→p.152
Quote phonebook	Quotes the text from the phonebook. Search the phonebook→Select the phonebook entry to quote→Select the item to quote→ ● · "Searching the Phonebook"→p.44 · You cannot quote a phone record by searching reading or name.

Item	Description
Quote own number	Quotes the text from Own number. Selects the item to quote→ ●
Prediction ON/ Prediction OFF	Specifies whether or not to use the predictive conversion function.

## Using Predictive Conversion

If "Prediction" is set to "ON", you can enter the text using the predictive conversion. The predictive conversion is the function that converts the partially entered text to the often-used word or the sentence you have converted and confirmed in the past.

### 1 Enter the reading

The predictive candidates for the entered reading are listed in the predictive candidate display area.

### 2 ● [Left]

The ■ (cursor) moves to the predictive candidate display area.

■ If the text you want to enter is not listed in the predictive candidates

Enter the reading continuously

The predictive candidates change depending on the entered reading.

■ To return to reading entry

● [Right] or enter the reading continuously

### 3 Select a predictive candidate.

The selected word is entered, and the predictive candidates to follow will appear continuously .

■ To delete the predictive candidate

● [Right]

### NOTE

- If no predictive candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of them, press the button to enter the next word.

# Overseas Use

<b>International Roaming Service .....</b>	<b>132</b>
International services available for this FOMA terminal .....	132
Switching network .....	132
Country codes of major destinations .....	133
<b>Checkpoints before Overseas Use .....</b>	<b>133</b>
Preparation before leaving .....	133
Using the FOMA terminal at the destination .....	135
Setting after returning to Japan .....	136
<b>Making/Receiving a Call at the Destination .....</b>	<b>136</b>
Making a call.....	136
Receiving a call.....	136
<b>Settings Related to Overseas Use.....</b>	<b>137</b>
Setting the network search method.....	137
Searching for available network operators .....	137
Setting priorities to network operators .....	137
Setting the NW connection switch method.....	138
Displaying network operator name while roaming .....	138
<b>Using Network Services Overseas.....</b>	<b>138</b>
Setting to use the network services overseas.....	138
Operating Voice Mail service overseas .....	139
Operating Call Forwarding service overseas .....	139
Operating roaming guidance overseas.....	139

## International Roaming Service

International roaming service (WORLD WING) is a service provided by DoCoMo to FOMA users, in which you can make calls and use i-mode overseas via other network providers.

With FOMA N600i, you can use this international roaming service by the usual phone number you use in Japan. Even overseas, voice call, videophone call, i-mode and SMS are available. Also, you can use convenient network services such as Voice Mail service and Call Forwarding service.

- You do not need to subscribe to the WORLD WING to use the international roaming service.
- To use the international roaming service, FOMA card (green) must be inserted to the FOMA N600i.
- You need subscription to use the network services overseas.
- There are the following three types of overseas network:

Network type	Description
3G network	3rd generation mobile communication network which conforms to 3GPP* <sup>1</sup> , the leading world standard
GPRS* <sup>2</sup> network	2.5th generation mobile communication network in which high-speed packet GPRS communication is enabled on GSM network
GSM* <sup>3</sup> network	2nd generation digital mobile communication network which is the most widespread globally

※ 1: 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)

A regional standardization collaboration established to develop common technical specification for the 3rd generation mobile communication system (IMT-2000).

※ 2: GPRS (General Packet Radio Service)

A packet communication service with the maximum communication speed at 115kbps spread in mainly in Europe and China.

※ 3: GSM (Global System for Mobile Communications)

A standard established in Europe for the 2nd generation mobile communication system, this is the most widely spread digital standard around the world.

- The available network services and functions differ depending on the network operator you connect to.
- For details on the network services available while roaming internationally, refer to "国際サービスご利用ガイド". Also, on DoCoMo website you can see the latest information on the international service, and you can download the latest "国際サービスご利用ガイド".  
<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/service/world/>

### International services available for this FOMA terminal

Service	Detail
Voice call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· You can make a voice call using the usual phone number even overseas.</li><li>· International call to Japan, international call to another country and local call in the destination are possible.</li></ul>
Videophone call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· You can make a videophone call to specified 3G network operator users overseas or FOMA users in Japan.</li></ul>
i-mode mail	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· You can send and receive i-mode mail by the usual address. You can also send and receive i-mode mail with images and melodies attached.</li></ul>
i-mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· i-mode service is also available overseas.</li></ul>
SMS (Short Message)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· You can send and receive SMS overseas. If the recipient is using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo→p.92</li></ul>

### Switching network

By the setting at the time of purchase, your FOMA terminal is to be connected to the FOMA network in Japan, and to the 3G network when you go abroad.

#### ● When you move from Japan to the destination

When you set "Network switch" to "Automatic" or "GSM", the FOMA terminal automatically searches and connects to an available network operator.

- If you changed the setting to "Automatic" while in Japan, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.

## ● When you move from the first destination to another

When you move out of the service area of the network operator you were connecting to, the FOMA terminal automatically searches for an available network again, then connects to another network operator.

## ● When you return to Japan

When you set "Network switch" to "Automatic" or "3G", the FOMA terminal connects to the FOMA network. You can use the FOMA terminal as usual (It is recommended to set to "3G").  
· If you changed the setting to "Automatic" while overseas, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.

### NOTE

- Depending on the reception condition and overseas network, the network switching may face difficulties.
- Please note that some key operation or function of this FOMA terminal may be unavailable while switching to another network operator.

## Country codes of major destinations

Use the following numbers for "Country code" when making an international call or setting "Prefix numbers".

As of February 2006

Region	Number	Region	Number
United states	1	China	86
United Kingdom	44	Germany	49
Italy	39	Turkey	90
India	91	New Caledonia	687
Indonesia	62	New Zealand	64
Egypt	20	Norway	47
Australia	61	Hungary	36
Austria	43	Fiji	679
Netherlands	31	Philippines	63
Canada	1	Finland	358
Korea	82	France	33
Greece	30	Brazil	55

Region	Number	Region	Number
Singapore	65	Vietnam	84
Switzerland	41	Peru	51
Sweden	46	Belgium	32
Spain	34	Hong Kong	852
Thailand	66	Macaw	853
Taiwan	886	Malaysia	60
Tahiti	689	Maldives	960
Czech	420	Russia	7

※:For other country codes and details, please check the DoCoMo website.

## Checkpoints before Overseas Use

Before using the FOMA terminal overseas, please check the items to be prepared before leaving Japan, basic notes on use at the destination and setting after returning to Japan.

## Preparation before leaving

To use this FOMA terminal overseas, you need to perform the following preparation before leaving.

### FOMA card (UIM)

To use overseas, the FOMA card (green) needs to be inserted to this FOMA terminal.

### Charging

Check the voltage available at the destination and use the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01.

- "FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01" allows AC 100V to 240V, however the plug form is for AC100V (spec for Japan). To use this adapter overseas, you need a conversion plug adapter suitable for the destination. You can purchase a conversion plug adapter at large-scale electrical appliance stores and shops that sell overseas travel equipment.
- Do not use a travel transformer to charge the FOMA terminal.

## Using i-mode and i-mode mail

To use i-mode and i-mode mail services, you need to activate "International Settings" under "Options" of "iMenu" in advance.

- For details, refer to "国際サービスご利用ガイド" and "i-mode Operation Guide".

## Setting network services

To use Voice Mail service and Call Forwarding service overseas, you need to set "remote operation setting" in advance.

- For details, refer to "国際サービスご利用ガイド".
- For some network operators, you cannot set and check the network services. Also, there are services that you can only set or check in Japan. Please refer to "国際サービスご利用ガイド" and "ネットワークサービス操作ガイド" before leaving Japan.

## Inquiries overseas

About loss, theft, total call duration and phone malfunction, refer to the "For inquiries overseas about loss, theft and total charge used" or "For malfunctions overseas" on the back cover of this manual with the "International call identifier for universal number" or "International call access number" added before the phone number.

### ● International call identifier for universal number (Table 1)

By adding the "International call identifier for universal number" before the inquiry phone number, you can make inquiries even from overseas.

The following table shows the "International call identifier for universal number" of each region.

As of February 2006

Region	No.	Region	No.
Ireland	00	Thailand	001
United States	011	Taiwan	00
Argentina	00	China	00
United Kingdom	00	Denmark	00
Israel	014	German	00
Italy	00	New Zealand	00
Australia	0011	Norway	00

Region	No.	Region	No.
Austria	00	Philippines	00
Netherlands	00	Finland	990
Canada	011	France	00
Korea	001	Brazil	0021
Columbia	009	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Hong Kong	001
Switzerland	00	Malaysia	00
Sweden	00	Luxembourg	00
Spain	00		

※:For the latest information, please check the DoCoMo website.

### ● International call access number of major destinations (Table 2)

When you cannot use the "International call identifier for universal number", use "International call access number".

The following table shows the "International call access number" of major destinations.

As of February 2006

Region	No.	Region	No.
Ireland	00	Denmark	00
United States	011	Germany	00
United Arab Emirates	00	Turkey	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00
India	00	Hungary	00
Indonesia	001	Philippines	00
Australia	0011	Finland	00/ 990
Netherlands	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0041/ 0021/ 0023
Korea	001	Vietnam	00

Region	No.	Region	No.
Greece	00	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Poland	00
Switzerland	00	Portugal	00
Sweden	00	Hong Kong	001
Spain	00	Macaw	00
Thailand	001	Malaysia	00
Taiwan	002	Monaco	00
Czech	00	Luxembourg	00
China	00	Russia	810

※:For the latest information, please check the DoCoMo website.




## Using the FOMA terminal at the destination

In the default setting at the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal automatically identifies available network operator after switching the FOMA terminal on overseas, so you can use the communication services without thinking about the destination country or region.

### Operator name display

During overseas use, the current network type is indicated by an icon and the network operator name appears on the standby screen.

The current network type is indicated by one of the following icons:

Icon	Description
	Appears while using Japanese FOMA network.
	Appears while using 3G network overseas.
	Appears while using GPRS/GSM network overseas.

### Available service for each network

Available services differ depending on the network you are connecting to.

Services \ Network	Japan	Overseas		
	FOMA	3G	GPRS	GSM
Making/receiving voice call	○	○	○	○
Making/receiving videophone call	○	○	×*1	×*1
Using i-mode	○	○	○	×
Receiving MessageR/F	○	○*2	○*2	×
Sending/receiving i-mode mail	○	○	○	×
Packet communication by connecting to another device (for example, PC)	○	×	×	×
Sending/receiving SMS	○	○	○	○

○: Available (May not be available depending on the network operator or region)

×: Not available

※1: Even if there is an incoming videophone call, the phone does not answer the call. When you make a videophone call, the FOMA terminal automatically makes a call by voice call if "Voice auto switch" is set to "ON".

※2: You cannot receive MessageF.

### Troubleshooting

#### When "圏外" remains on the screen

- Check the "Newtork switch" setting.
- Check the "NW search mode" setting.
- When you first use the FOMA terminal after arriving at the destination, set "Network switch" to "Automatic" or "GSM". If you changed the setting to "Automatic" while in Japan, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.
- This FOMA terminal provides international roaming service, therefore after you switch on it may take some time to search for reception and while searching "圏外" may appear.

#### Videophone call/i-mode/SMS is not available

- Check that the current network operator provides the service on "国際サービスご利用ガイド" or DoCoMo website.
- Check the "Newtork switch" setting.
- Check the "NW search mode" setting.

## ● Other party's phone number not notified

- Even if the other party notifies the caller ID, the other party's phone number will not appear if the network or operator does not supply the information.

## Setting after returning to Japan

When you set "Network switch" to "Automatic" or "3G", the FOMA terminal automatically connects to the FOMA network after being switched on (It is recommended to set to "3G"). If you had the setting to "Automatic" while overseas, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.

### If you cannot connect to FOMA network

#### ● Is the "Network switch" set to "GSM"?

Set "Network switch" to a setting other than "GSM".

#### ● Is the "NW search mode" set to "Manual"?

Set "NW search mode" to "Automatic".


## Making/Receiving a Call at the Destination

Using international roaming service, you can make/receive a call in a country/region outside Japan.

## Making a call

### Making an international call from destination (including to Japan)

#### 1 Dial the following:

"+" (  ) One second or longer)- country code  
- area code - phone number

- If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the first zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

#### 2

The international call is made.

■ To make an international videophone call



### Making a local call at the destination

#### 1 Dial the other party's phone number starting from the area code

#### 2

The local call is made.

■ To make an international videophone call



### NOTE

- If the other party is a "WORLD WING" user, make an international call even if you and the other party are in the same destination.
- You can only use the videophone call service when the other party and you are both using the network operator providing the FOMA videophone service.  
For details on the network operator providing the videophone service, refer to the DoCoMo website.

## Receiving a call



Using international roaming service, you can receive a call overseas.

#### 1 When you receive a call, press or

You can talk to the other party.

■ When you receive a videophone call



Pressing  sends the camera image, while  sends the substitutive image.

### Other party's procedure to call you

#### ● When the other party call you from Japan

The other party can call you (this FOMA terminal) at the destination just by dialing the usual phone number from a normal landline phone or mobile phone.

090 (or 080) - XXXX - XXXX

## ● When the other party call you from outside Japan

Whether your destination is Japan or overseas, the other party must dial the international access number + "81" (country code of Japan)



International access number - 81 - 90 (or 80) - XXXX- XXXX

## Settings Related to Overseas Use

You can set the settings related to overseas use, such as how to search for operators in the network and priority setting among the network operators.

### Setting the network search method

You can set the network operator search method in case you move out of the service area of the current network operator.

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Connection setting"

2 "NW search mode" → Select an item



Item	Description
Automatic	Automatically searches and connects to other network operator. · Connects to the network operator with the highest priority in "PLMN setting".
Manual	Searches for the network and displays available network operator candidates. Select a network operator from the list.

#### NOTE

- When the network operator set by "Manual" setting becomes out of service, search for a network operator again or change the setting to "Automatic".

### Searching for available network operators

You can search for available network operators and switch to another operator.

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Connection setting"

2 "Network re-search"

The FOMA terminal searches within the connected network, and available network operators appear as a list.



3 Select a network operator to connect to

#### NOTE

- If you select a network operator from the search result list after a network search, "NW search mode" will be set to "Manual".


### Setting priorities to network operators



You can set the priority among network operator to connect to when you move out of the service area of the current network operator.

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Connection setting"



2 "PLMN setting"


Priority network list appears, starting from the network operator with the highest priority.

3 Select the network operator to change the priority →  [Left] → "Change priority"


4  to change the priority → 

#### Adding network operators

1 On the standby screen  [Left] →  (Settings) → "Connection setting"

2 "PLMN setting" →  [Left] → "Add"

■ To delete a network operator

Select the network operator to delete →  [Left] → "Delete"

3 Select an item

Item	Description
UPLMN manual	Registers a network operator which is not listed in the FOMA terminal to the priority network list. Enter the country code (MCC)→Enter the network number (MNC)
UPLMN by list	Selects a network operator to be listed in the PLMN list from the network operator list registered in the FOMA terminal.
Add current NW	Registers the currently connected network operator to the PLMN list.

### Setting the NW connection switch method

- 1 On the standby screen [Left] → (Settings) → "Connection setting"
- 2 "Network switch" → Select an item

Item	Description	Available network			
		FOMA	3G	GSM	GPRS
Auto-matic	Switches automatically to 3G (first priority), GSM and GPRS networks overseas and connects to FOMA network service within Japan.	○	○	○	○
3G	Connects only to 3G network overseas, and to FOMA network in Japan.	○	○	×	×
GSM	Connects only to GSM and GPRS networks.	×	×	○	○

#### NOTE

- Changing the setting of this function causes re-searching of network operator depending on the new setting, and the operator to connect to may be switched. When this happens, the switching of networks may take a long time or fail depending on the reception and network status.

### Displaying network operator name while roaming

You can choose whether or not to display the name of the currently connected network operator while international roaming.

- 1 On the standby screen [Left] → (Settings) → "Connection setting"
- 2 "Operator name disp" → "ON"/"OFF"

### Using Network Services Overseas

You can use some of the network services overseas such as Voice Mail service and Call Forwarding service.

- You need to subscribe to Voice Mail service and/or Call Forwarding service in Japan to use Voice Mail service (overseas) and Call Forwarding service (overseas).
- For details on the network services, refer to "国際サービスご利用ガイド".

### Setting to use the network services overseas

To use the network services overseas, you need to set remote operation setting in Japan in advance.

- 1
- 2

## Operating Voice Mail service overseas

To operate the Voice Mail functions overseas, dial the following numbers:

To	Dial these numbers
Start Voice Mail service	*+*(☎) One second or longer)-81-90310-14110-☎
Stop Voice Mail service	*+*(☎) One second or longer)-81-90310-14100-☎
Replaying Voice Mail messages	*+*(☎) One second or longer)-81-90310-14170-☎
Change Voice Mail service settings	*+*(☎) One second or longer)-81-90310-14160-☎

## Operating Call Forwarding service overseas

To operate the Call Forwarding functions overseas, dial the following numbers.

To	Dial these numbers
Start call forwarding service	*+*(☎) One second or longer)-81-90310-14210-☎
Stop call forwarding service	*+*(☎) One second or longer)-81-90310-14200-☎

## Operating roaming guidance overseas

You can start/stop the roaming service.

**1** Dial the following:  
"+\*(☎) one second or longer)-81-90310-18160

**2** ☎ → Operate according to the guidance

**【MEMO】**

# Appendix

Menu Function List.....	142
Character Allocation to Keypad .....	148
Symbols and Special Characters List.....	149
Pictographs Symbols List.....	150
Smiley Face Symbols List.....	151
Kuten Code List .....	152
Common Phrases List .....	156
Services Available for the FOMA terminal .....	157
Options and Accessories .....	157
Data Link Software.....	157
Malfunction Checklist .....	158
If Any Error Message Appears .....	162
Warranty and After-Sales Service.....	163
Warranty .....	163
After-sales service .....	163
Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information.....	164
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones .....	165

# Menu Function List



























indicates that the item returns to the default setting at the time of purchase by "Reset" (p.53).

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting at the time of purchase	See page
Mail	Inbox		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ①</li> <li>● [L] ① ①</li> </ul>	—	86
	Outbox		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ②</li> <li>● [L] ① ②</li> </ul>	—	86
	Draft		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ③</li> <li>● [L] ① ③</li> </ul>	—	81
	Compose message		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ④</li> <li>● [L] ① ④</li> </ul>	—	78
	Check new message		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ⑤</li> <li>● [L] ① ⑤</li> </ul>	—	83
	Rcv. option setting		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ⑥</li> <li>● [L] ① ⑥</li> </ul>	OFF	83
	SMS		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ⑦</li> <li>● [L] ① ⑦</li> </ul>	SMS center: NTT DoCoMo Select storage: Phone	96
	Mail settings	Receive settings		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ⑧ ①</li> <li>● [L] ① ⑧ ①</li> </ul>	Refer to "Setting Up the Mail Functions" (p.90).
Edit settings			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ⑧ ②</li> <li>● [L] ① ⑧ ②</li> </ul>	90	
Display settings			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ⑧ ③</li> <li>● [L] ① ⑧ ③</li> </ul>	90	
Other settings			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [R] ⑧ ④</li> <li>● [L] ① ⑧ ④</li> </ul>	96	
i-mode	iMenu		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● ①</li> <li>● [L] ② ①</li> </ul>	—	67
	Bookmark		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● ②</li> <li>● [L] ② ②</li> </ul>	—	69
	Screen memo		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● ③</li> <li>● [L] ② ③</li> </ul>	—	70
	Last URL		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● ④</li> <li>● [L] ② ④</li> </ul>	—	68

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting at the time of purchase	See page
i-mode	Go to location		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● (8) (5)</li> <li>● [L] (2) (5)</li> </ul>	—	68
	Message		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● (8) (4)</li> <li>● [L] (2) (4)</li> </ul>	—	73
	Check new message		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● (8) (2)</li> <li>● [L] (2) (2)</li> </ul>	—	83
	i-mode settings	Home URL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● (8) (1)</li> <li>● [L] (2) (8) (1)</li> </ul>	Refer to "Specifying Your i-mode Settings" (p.76).	76
		Display settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● (8) (2)</li> <li>● [L] (2) (8) (2)</li> </ul>		76
Certificate		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● (8) (3)</li> <li>● [L] (2) (8) (3)</li> </ul>	76		
Other settings		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● (8) (4)</li> <li>● [L] (2) (8) (4)</li> </ul>	76		
i-αppli	Software list		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [L] (3) (1)</li> </ul>	—	99
	α Display light		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [L] (3) (2)</li> </ul>	Depend on system	100
	α Vibrator		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [L] (3) (3)</li> </ul>	Depend on system	100
	Auto start failure		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [L] (3) (4)</li> </ul>	—	100
Settings	Incoming/Volume	Volume	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [L] (4) (1) (1)</li> </ul>	Ring volume: Level 2 Message ring volume: Level 2 Voice volume: Level 2 Keypad volume: Level 2	48
		Ring tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [L] (4) (1) (2)</li> </ul>	Phone: Melody1 Video-phone: Melody1 Mail: Alarm1 SMS: Alarm1 MessageR: Alarm1 MessageF: Alarm1	48
		Set ringing time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [L] (4) (1) (3)</li> </ul>	Mute seconds: 0 second Missed call disp: ON	48
		Vibrator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [L] (4) (1) (4)</li> </ul>	OFF	48
		Disp phonebook img	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [L] (4) (1) (5)</li> </ul>	ON	48
		Answer setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● [L] (4) (1) (6)</li> </ul>	OFF	48

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting at the time of purchase	See page
Settings	Clock	Clock setting	•[L] 4 2 1	—	49
		Date setting	•[L] 4 2 2	—	49
		Time format	•[L] 4 2 3	24h	49
		Clock display	•[L] 4 2 4	ON	49
	Manner mode	Manner mode set	•[L] 4 3 1	Manner mode	49
		Original	•[L] 4 3 2	Setting for Original 1/2 Volume Ring volume: Level 0 Keypad volume: Level 0 Voice volume: Level 2 Mail ring volume: Level 0 Alarm volume: Level 0 Ring tone Same as the "Ring tone" for normal mode, when manner mode is not set Vibrator: Pattern 1 Mic sensitive: Up LVA tone: OFF	49
	Display	Wake-up display	•[L] 4 4 1	Pre-installed image	50
		Stand-by display	•[L] 4 4 2	Calendar: ON My picture: Illuminations	50
		Color pattern	•[L] 4 4 3	Gray	50
		Power save mode	•[L] 4 4 4	Display light: Level 2 Light time: 10 seconds	50
		Select language	•[L] 4 4 5	Japanese	50
	Talk	Automatic redial	•[L] 4 5 1	OFF	51
Prefix setting		•[L] 4 5 2	"WORLD CALL" (009130010) (The user setting is not reset.)	51	
Call data		•[L] 4 5 3	Last call duration : 000:00:00 Total call duration : 000:00:00 Videophone : 000:00:00	51	
Lock/Security	All lock	•[L] 4 6 1	—	58	
	PIN setting	•[L] 4 6 2	—	57	
	CHG security code	•[L] 4 6 3	—	57	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting at the time of purchase	See page
Settings	Connection setting	NW search mode	●[L] (4) (7) (1)	Automatic	137
		Network re-search	●[L] (4) (7) (2)	—	137
		PLMN setting	●[L] (4) (7) (3)	—	137
		Network switch	●[L] (4) (7) (4)	3G	138
		Operator name disp	●[L] (4) (7) (5)	OFF	138
		Host selection	●[L] (4) (7) (6)	i-mode (FOMA card (UIM)) User setting: Not stored	52
	Video-phone	Disp. set V-phone	●[L] (4) (8) (1)	Other image	52
		Image quality	●[L] (4) (8) (2)	Normal	52
		Color mode set	●[L] (4) (8) (3)	Normal	52
		Camera img sending	●[L] (4) (8) (4)	Send camera image	52
		Voice auto switch	●[L] (4) (8) (5)	OFF	52
	Other settings	Automatic answer	●[L] (4) (9) (1)	OFF	52
		Side key guard	●[L] (4) (9) (2)	OFF	52
		Charge sound	●[L] (4) (9) (3)	ON	53
		CHR input method	●[L] (4) (9) (4)	Prediction: ON	53
		Illumination	●[L] (4) (9) (5)	Illumination Color Phone: Color 1 Videophone: Color 2 Mail: Color 3 SMS: Color 3 MessageR: Color 4 MessageF: Color 4 Pattern: Standard Illumination talk Phone: Color 1 Videophone: Color 2	53
		Reset	●[L] (4) (9) (6)	—	53
		Initialize	●[L] (4) (9) (7)	—	53

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting at the time of purchase	See page
Data box	My picture		●[L]  	Sort: Chronological ↑	102
	Imotion		●[L]  	List display: Picture list	104
	Melody		●[L]  	Sort: Chronological ↑	106
	Memory info		●[L]  	—	103
Camera	Photo mode		●[L]  	Camera direction: Rear camera Select size: Mail(L)(176 × 144) Storage setting: Mail (S) White balance: Automatic Color mode set: Normal Brightness: 0 Zoom: × 1 Select frame: OFF Shutter sound: Shutter sound 1	61
	Movie mode		●[L]  	Camera direction: Rear camera Select size: Large (176 × 144) File size setting: Restricted(Mail) Storage setting: Normal White balance: Automatic Brightness: 0 Zoom: × 1 Movie type set: Normal	63
Service	Check messages		●[L]  	—	119
	Notify caller ID		●[L]  	※ : Setting at the time of network service subscription. Refer to "Network Service Operation Guide" for details.	28
	Voice mail		●[L]  		118
	Call waiting		●[L]  		119
	Call forwarding		●[L]  		120
	Bar nuisance call		●[L]  		121
	Additional service		●[L]  	Additional service: Not stored Response message setting: Not stored	122
	Service dialing No.	ドコモ総合案内・受付 (For inquiries)		※ : Depends on FOMA card (UIM)	—
ドコモ故障問合せ (For malfunctions)			—	122	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting at the time of purchase	See page
Phonebook	Add to phonebook		① [L] ⑧ ①	—	42
	Search phonebook		② [L] ⑧ ②	—	44
	Call rejection		③ [L] ⑧ ③	OFF	58
	No. of phonebook		④ [L] ⑧ ④	—	45
	Group setting		⑤ [L] ⑧ ⑤	FOMA terminal (Phone): Group 0 to 19 FOMA card (UIM): 0 to 10	45
	Call data	Received calls	⑥ [L] ⑧ ⑥ ①	—	35
		Redial	⑦ [L] ⑧ ⑦ ②	—	35
	Own number		[L] ④ [L] ⑧ ④	—	28 46
Tool	Schedule		[L] ⑨ ①	—	111
	Alarm clock		[L] ⑨ ②	—	112
	Calculator		[L] ⑨ ③	—	113
	Text memo		[L] ⑨ ④	—	113
	Common phrases		[L] ⑨ ⑤	Common phrases: Initialize common phrases (only Folder 1 and 2) Folder name: Folder 1 and 2	114
	Own dictionary		[L] ⑨ ⑥	—	114

## Character Allocation to Keypad

Key	Kanji/hiragana input mode	Kana input mode
①	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ
②	かきくけこ	カキクケコ
③	さしすせそ	サシスセソ
④	たちつとっ	タチツテトッ
⑤	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ
⑥	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ
⑦	まみむめも	マミムメモ
⑧	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ
⑨	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ
⑩	わをん-わ	ワワン-ワ* <sup>1</sup>
Ⓜ	_____ * <sup>2</sup>	_____
Ⓟ	- ° ` . ! ? * <sup>3</sup>	- ° ` . ! ? * <sup>3</sup>

Key	Alphabet input mode	Numeric input mode
①	♥☎* <sup>4</sup>	1
②	ABC a b c	2
③	DEF d e f	3
④	GHI g h i	4
⑤	JKL j k l	5
⑥	MNO m n o	6
⑦	PQRS p q r s	7
⑧	TUV t u v	8
⑨	WXYZ w x y z	9
⑩	_____	0+* <sup>5</sup>
Ⓜ	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp * <sup>6</sup> www .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp	* .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp * <sup>6</sup> www .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp
Ⓟ	.@/!?((),_-,:* <sup>7</sup> ¥	#.@/!?((),_-,:* <sup>7</sup> ¥

- \*1: You can enter the lower case "フ" in full-pitch character input mode.
- \*2: Pressing ☺ more than one second in "Upper case input mode" of "Kanji/hiragana input mode" switches mode to "Kuten code".
- \*3: In "Kanji/hiragana input mode" and "Kana input mode", " " and " " appear only for the previous letter to which " " and " " can be attached. ";", ":", "!", " " and " ? " cannot be entered when inputting readings to the own dictionary and the UIM phonebook.
- \*4: Valid only when entering the SMS messages. You cannot enter "Pictograph" in the SMS message input, but you can enter "♥" and "☎". Also, while symbols are displayed as half-pitch characters, "♥" and "☎" are always full-pitch characters.
- \*5: "+" can be entered when holding down the key for one second or longer when inputting the address field for SMS or dialing a phone number.
- \*6: These characters cannot be displayed when switching to full-pitch caharacter mode (except "\*" in numeric input mode).
- \*7: This symbol is displayed as "—" in "full-pitch input mode".

■ : Lower case characters can be entered after selecting "Lower case" in the function menu or inputting the character in upper case then pressing ☺ .



## ■ Symbols in Japanese conversion

You can enter symbols by entering and converting "きごう" to display the symbol candidates, and then selecting from the symbol candidates. You can also enter the name of a symbol in hiragana as follows, and then convert the text into the desired symbol.

Symbol name (input characters)	Symbol	Symbol name (input characters)	Symbol
あっと、 あっとまーく	@	さんかく	△▲▽▼
		しゃせん	∧
いごーる	=	しかく	□■◇◆
えん	¥	たす	+
おす	♯	どう	∖ ∨ > ♪ ♫ //
おなじ	々 //	ばーせんと	%
おなじく	//	ひく	-
おんぷ	♪	ひしがた	◇◆
かける	×	ほし	☆★※
いごーる	=	しかく	□■◇◆
かっこ	「」 「」 「」 「」 () [] {} // ◇ ◁ ▷ ≪ ≫ 0 [] // 「」	まる	○●◎..
		むげん	∞
		めす	♀
から	~	やじるし	↔↔↑↓
こめ	※	ゆうびん	〒
ころん	:	わる	÷
こんま	.		

## Pictographs Symbols List

### ■ List of Pictographs 1



### ■ List of Pictographs 2



### NOTE

- If the pictograph is used in message text of i-mode mail, etc., it may not appear correctly at the receiving side when sent to a mobile phone that does not support pictograph or a PC. Even if the receiving device supports pictograph, it may not appear correctly if the device does not support pictograph 2.

# Smiley Face Symbols List

If you input "かお" or "かおもじ", or the meaning (input text) and convert, the candidates appear and you can select to input the symbols.

● If you input "かお", candidates from "Smiley Face Symbols 1" and "Smiley Face Symbols 2" appear.

● If you input "かおもじ", candidates from "Smiley Face Symbols 1" appear.

● If you input the meaning (input text), corresponding "Smiley Face Symbols 1" appear.

## Smiley Face Symbols 1

Meaning (input text)	Smiley face symbols	Meaning (input text)	Smiley face symbols	Meaning (input text)	Smiley face symbols
あせあせ (Sweat! Sweat!)	(;_^A	ぎやはは (Ha-ha!)	("Q^)/^	ねてる (Zzzz...)	(--_)zz
あは (Ah ha!)	(o^o^o)	きらーん (Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆.☆)	ねむい (I'm sleepy)	\(^o^)/
ありがと/ありがとう (Thanks!)	m(_)_m	こあら (Koala)	(-Q-)	はてな (Wait a minute!)	(. . ?)
いかり (Angry)	(`´)	こそこそ (Whisper)	(. _ .	ばんざい (Hurrah!)	\(^o^)/
いたた (Ouch!)	(>_<)	こまったんだ (My goodness)	(~ ~)ξ	びくっ (Twitch!)	(*.*)
いっぶく (Take a break)	(^!^)^y~	さよなら (Good-bye!)	(_^)/~	ひやあせ (Cold Sweat!)	(^o^)
いっぶく (Take a break)	(^..^)^y-~^~^	さよなら (Good-bye!)	(T_T)/~	ぶい (Vvvv!)	(^^)^v
ういんく (Wink)	(^_)	じーっ (Gaze)	(-_-)	ぶたー (Pig)	)^o^(
うん (Yeah)	(^ _ ^) ( _ _ ^)	しくしく (Sob, sob)	(T_T)	ぼし (Star)	☆彡
え (What?)	(@_@:)	ちゅ (Kiss!)	(^3^)/	ほりほり (Scratch, scratch)	(^^)彡
えーん (Crying)	(:;)	ちゅ (Kiss! Kiss!)	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!	む (Sullen)	(-_-)メ)
えへん (Ahem!)	(^-^)	どき (Shocked!)	(◎-◎:)	むか (Offended)	(;-_+
おーい (Hey!)	(^o^)/	ども (Well, well)	\(^_^)(^_^)/	めがてん (W*H*A*T?)	(. . :)
がーん (Shocked!)	(^-□^-);!!	なぜ (Why?)	(?_?)	めも (Memo)	φ(. .)
がんば (Cheer up!)	p(^)^q	にこ (Smile!)	(^-^)	わーい (Wow!)	(^o^)
かんばい (Cheers!)	(^^)/▽☆▽\(^^^)	にこ (Smile! smile)	(*^_^*)	わくわく (I'm excited!)	o(^_^)o
きこえない (Can't hear)	(-_-)	ね (Isn't it?)	(. . ^)b		

## Smiley Face Symbols 2

Smiley face symbol candidates				
(^_^)	(-_-:)	(T_T)	:-(	!(^^)!
(^^)	m(_)_m	('_)	:~0	(>_<)
(^o^)	<(_)_>	(^_^)/	(^-_)	(*_*)
(*^_^*)	_(^_)_	(^^)/	(^-^)	(@_@)
(^_^:)	_(^_)_	(^^)/~^~^	(^-)^v	(?_?)
(^^:)	(:;)	(^_^)/~	(^o^)	(= =)
^^;	(/_:)	:~)	(^o~)	(-_-)









First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
751	歌	寬	訖	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	800	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
752	覺	訖	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	801	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
753	訖	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	802	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
754	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	803	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
755	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	804	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
756	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	805	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
757	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	806	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
758	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	807	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
759	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	808	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
760	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	809	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
761	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	810	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
762	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	811	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
763	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	812	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
764	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	813	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
765	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	814	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
766	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	815	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
767	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	816	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
768	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	817	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
769	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	818	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
770	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	819	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
771	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	820	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
772	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	821	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
773	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	822	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
774	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	823	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
775	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	824	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
776	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	825	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
777	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	826	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
778	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	827	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
779	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	828	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
780	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	829	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
781	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	830	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
782	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	831	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
783	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	832	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
784	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	833	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
785	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	834	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
786	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	835	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
787	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	836	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
788	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	837	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
789	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	838	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
790	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	839	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
791	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	840	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝	陝
792	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠										
793	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠										
794	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠										
795	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠										
796	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠										
797	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠										
798	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠										
799	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠	詠										

# Common Phrases List

## Folder 1 (common phrases)

No	Japanese expression	English expression
1	ごめんなさい	Sorry
2	ありがとう	Thank you
3	おめでとう!	Congratulations!
4	時間だよ!	It's time
5	もう少し待って	Wait a minute
6	今着いた!	Just arrived
7	予定変更!	Schedule change
8	どこにいるの?	Where are you?
9	がんばってね	Do your best

## Folder 2 (common phrases)

No	Japanese expression	English expression
1	了解しました	All right
2	いつも大変お世話になります	I hope you are well
3	お疲れさまです	Well done
4	至急確認ください	Emergency
5	いかがでしょうか?	How do you think?
6	電話ください	Please call
7	遅れます	I will be late
8	留守電にメッセージを入れてください	Leave a message on voice mail
9	よろしくお願致します	Thank you for your help

## Services Available for the FOMA terminal

Available service		Phone number
Collect call (Receiver pays for the call)		(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay) (Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)		(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)		(No area code) 117
Weather (pay)		Area code for weather forecast you want + 177
Police emergency		(No area code) 110
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency		(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call		(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (pay)		(No area code) 171

### NOTE

- When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)). (As of February, 2006)
- When you use the Directory Assistance Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with impaired vision or disability of the arms or hands. For further details call NTT inquiries on 116 from general subscriber phones. (As of February, 2006)
- When calling 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, the location from which the call is sent cannot be established. Therefore, first say you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number, and state your location clearly so that the police or fire department can call you back. Also, do not move around when making the call, so that you are not disconnected. Do not turn off the FOMA terminal immediately after ending the call, but leave it turned on for more ten minutes or so, so that you can receive a call.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.

## Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, the FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet both your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available in some areas. For more information, contact a DoCoMo service representative.

For details of options and accessories, see relevant User's Guide.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001 \*1/P002 \*1
- Stereo Earphone Set P001 \*1
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA AC Adapter O1
- FOMA DC Adapter O1
- Battery Pack N12
- Back Cover N11
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use O1 \*2

\*1: To connect to FOMA N600i, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is necessary.

\*2: To use FOMA N600i overseas, you will need a power plug conversion adapter to suit the destination.

## Data Link Software

Using "FOMA N600i Data Link Software", you can transfer phonebook entries and Bookmark data to and from the PC connected to the FOMA terminal.

You can download the Data Link Software for the FOMA N600i from the NEC Internet website.

- NEC\* ファイワイもばいる (Wai Wai Mobile)\*

<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

Visit the website above or see the help of the Data Link Software for more details on downloading method, transferable data, operating environment, operating method and restricted items.

(The software cannot be downloaded by the site connection function of the FOMA terminal. Use a PC to download. You can use the software for free of charge. A communication charge will be made for the download)

● Setting environment and note

The "FOMA USB Cable (optional)" is required to connect to a PC. For other environments or Operating Systems, see "ソフトウェアのご紹介" [動作環境] on the download page.

Information downloaded using i-mode/i-αpli is not allowed to be transferred from the FOMA terminal even if you use the Data Link Software, according to the copyright law. Also, you cannot transfer data that are not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.

■ Operating System

Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000 and Windows XP (Japanese edition)


※ PC/AT compatible model on which one of the Operating Systems above runs

■ Before using the product

- NEC Corporation (hereinafter referred to as "this company") does not guarantee performance on licensed programs, compatibility, accuracy or reliability for the result of use, or is not liable for defects whatsoever. You will be responsible for any problems or difficulties arising on the licensed programs and will bear any costs arising.
- This company shall not take any responsibility for your lost profits, any damages arising in special situations (including ones that this company could forecast), or damages you are liable, claimed by the third party. Moreover, you shall not make any claim against this company.

Inquiries about Data Link Software

NEC (NEC NTT DoCoMo Terminals Marketing and Sales Division)

 0120-102-001 (Japanese only)

Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm

(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

\* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.



## Malfunction Checklist










When you think the phone is not functioning properly, please take action according to the following table.

- If you are using the FOMA terminal overseas, please refer to p.163 first.

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
FOMA terminal does not turn on (FOMA terminal cannot be used)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Is the battery pack properly attached?</li> <li>· Has the battery run out?</li> </ul>	24 26
The "圏外" icon appears and I hear a busy tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Are you out of service area or is the reception poor?</li> </ul>	27
I dialed a number and initiated the call, but all I hear is a busy tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Did you start dialing before hearing the dial tone?</li> <li>· Did you forget to dial the area code?</li> <li>· Is the "圏外" symbol displayed?</li> <li>· Is "Please wait" displayed?</li> </ul>	30 30 27 -
I cannot receive calls I cannot hear the ring tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Is the Call rejection function set?</li> <li>· Is the FOMA terminal set to Public mode?</li> <li>· Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode?</li> <li>· Is All lock set?</li> <li>· Is the start time of Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service set to "0"?</li> <li>· Is the Ring volume set to "Silent"?</li> </ul>	58 31 49 58 118 120 48
I cannot hear the ring tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Is "Mute seconds" of "Set ringing time" set to longer time (e.g. 99 seconds)? Set "Mute seconds" to shorter time.</li> </ul>	48



Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The mail ring tone sounds but no mail is received	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is "Msg. notification" set? When the number of the new Voice Mails increases while the FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off, and then you come back into service area or turn on the FOMA terminal, the mail ring tone sound to notify you of increase on the number of Voice Mails.</li> </ul>	118
Cannot charge the FOMA terminal (the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal does not light)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal?</li> </ul>	24
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is the adapter firmly plugged into the power outlet?</li> </ul>	26
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Are the AC adapter and the FOMA terminal correctly connected?</li> </ul>	26
The key does not sound when I press it	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is "Keypad volume" set to level 0?</li> </ul>	48
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode?</li> </ul>	49
I cannot use Any key answer to answer a voice call/videophone call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"?</li> <li>You cannot use Any key answer to answer a videophone call.</li> </ul>	48 -
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is the earpiece speaker properly placed against your ear?</li> </ul>	18
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is anything like a sticker obstructing the earpiece speaker?</li> </ul>	18
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is anything obstructing the speaker during hands-free?</li> </ul>	18
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting until you can hear the other party clearly.</li> </ul>	48
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is the "Volume" level set to zero? Change the volume level.</li> </ul>	48

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The other party's voice is too loud during a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Did you change the "Volume" setting? Change the setting until you can hear the other party clearly.</li> </ul>	48
The other party cannot hear your voice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is the mouthpiece obstructed by something?</li> </ul>	18
"All lock" appears	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter the security code and cancel the All lock function.</li> </ul>	58
Pressing  does not operate the FOMA terminal when it is folded	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is "Side key guard" set to "ON"?</li> </ul>	52
Pressing  does not check missed calls, etc. when the FOMA terminal is folded		
The function name and messages are displayed in English	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is the "Select language" ("バイリンガル") set to English?</li> </ul>	28. 50
The display is dim	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is the "Display light" of "Power save mode" set to "Level 1"?</li> </ul>	50
Receiving an incoming call immediately after turning on the power displays the phone number but does not display the name stored in the Phonebook	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The Phonebook function may not be available then.</li> </ul>	-

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
It takes some time for the power to turn on after pressing and holding  for one second or longer	· The data checking may take time e.g. if the phonebook is full of data.	—
The call does not end even after pressing 	· If you have used key operation (  ,  and  ) following voice instructions of network service, the call may not end by pressing  . Press  again.	—
Nothing appears on the display, but  [Left] and  [Right] are flashing	· The FOMA terminal is in power save mode. Press a key to cancel the power save mode.	50
Receiving SMS does not display the name stored in the Phonebook	· Did you correctly store the phone number of the sender on the phone number line of the Phonebook?	44
Mail is not automatically sorted	· If the sender's mail address is "(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", store only the phone number in the Auto-sort settings.	87
	· If the sender's mail address is not "(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp", store the complete address including the domain in the Auto-sort settings.	87
Mail is not automatically received	· If you have set "Rcv. option setting" to "ON", set it to "OFF".	90

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
i-mode, i-mode mail and i-appli cannot be connected	· Is "Host selection" set to "i-mode"? · If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	52 —
The message [添付ファイル削除] (attached file deleted) appear on mail	· You cannot receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center and you receive only the message.	—
A file attached to mail sent from PC was deleted	· If the image file is attached to mail sent from a device other than the FOMA terminal, only up to 500 Kbytes JPEG-formatted image can be received.	—
The images taken with the built-in camera are flickered	· When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc.	—
Reaction is slow when any key is pressed	· It may occur if a large amount of data is stored on the FOMA terminal.	—

## ■ Overseas use

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
"  appears on the screen and international roaming service is not available	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Are you outside the service area of international roaming service, or in an area where reception is weak?</li> <li>Check that you are within the service area or the supporting operator on "国際サービスご利用ガイド" or DoCoMo website.</li> <li>Using "Network switch", switch to the network that supports the service.</li> <li>Using "NW search mode", search for the operator that supports the service.</li> <li>If "Network switch" was set to "Automatic" in Japan, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.</li> </ul>	<p>—</p> <p>—</p> <p>138</p> <p>137</p> <p>—</p>
Cannot use videophone call /SMS /i-mode /packet communication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that you are within the service area or the supporting operator on "国際サービスご利用ガイド" or WORLD WING website.</li> <li>Using "Network switch", switch to the network that supports the service.</li> <li>Using "NW search mode", search for the operator with the service available.</li> <li>Data communication performed by packet communication connected to a PC is not available overseas.</li> </ul>	<p>—</p> <p>138</p> <p>137</p> <p>124</p>
After coming back from overseas, "  still appears on the screen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is "Network switch" set to "GSM"?</li> <li>If "Network switch" was set to "Automatic" overseas, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.</li> </ul>	138

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The other party's phone number is not notified A different phone number is notified as the other party The function to use the information listed in the phonebook or caller identity notification does not work	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Even if the other party notifies his/her identity, in some network or operator the number may be specified as "Not supported" call or a different phone number may be notified as the other party.</li> </ul>	—

## If Any Error Message Appears

- Numbers enclosed in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used to distinguish the errors sent from the i-mode Center.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Same file name already saved"	· You cannot save images, movies and melodies as the same file name. Use another file name.	—
"No data"	· Appears when there was no phonebook listed that fulfills the criteria for the phonebook search.	44
"This data can no longer be replayed"	· Appears when you try to play an i-motion with no more playback count.	—
"Restricted play span is expired"	· Appears when you try to play an i-motion after the playback limit span.	—
"Replay period has expired"	· Appears when you try to play an i-motion after playback period ended.	—
"Error"	· Appears when you try to operate the network service outside the service area or where the reception is weak. Move to an area where "T" is displayed and try again.	—
"Wrong security code" "Security code is 4 to 8 digits"	· Appears when you need to enter the security code for the function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct security code. If you forget your FOMA terminal security code, you need to take the FOMA terminal, your current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the subscriber (such as a drivers license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
"Enter correct network security code"	· Appears when you need to enter the network security code for the function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct network security code. If you forget your network security code, you need to take the FOMA terminal, your current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the subscriber (such as a drivers license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset.	—
"This data is not supported by this phone"	· Appears when attempting to replay unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion.	—
"Invalid UIM requested service not available"	· Appears when selecting and attempting to access a screen memo, messageR or MessageF which is protected by FOMA card (UIM) operational restriction function.	23
"Insert UIM"	· This message appears when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted properly, or is broken. Check that the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted properly.	23
"PUK code blocked"	· This message appears when attempting to power on or perform operation related to FOMA card (UIM) when PUK code is blocked. Contact an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.	—
"Wrong PIN1 code" "Wrong PIN2 code"	· Appears when you need to enter the PIN1/PIN2 code for the function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct PIN1/PIN2.	—

## Warranty and After-Sales Service

### Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check the contents, the information about "the shop or date of purchase", etc. and keep the card in a safe place. If the card does not contain necessary information, immediately contact the shop and request them to fill in the card. The warranty period is one year from the date of purchase.
- The whole or part of the product, including its accessories, is subject to improvement without notice.
- The stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost through the damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to take notes of the stored data just in case. If you have a PC (Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000 and Windows XP), you can transfer the data to your PC by using the dedicated Data Link Software and the FOMA USB Cable (optional), and then back up the data on the PC. In the course of repairs on your FOMA terminal, data downloaded via i-mode or i-αppli are not transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright law.

### After-sales service

#### ● If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before having your FOMA terminal repaired, see the "Malfunction Checklist" in this manual.

If you still have problems, call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

#### ● If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Remember to take your warranty card with you.

#### ■ During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired free of charge in accordance with our written warranty policy.

- Be sure to take the warranty card with you when having your FOMA terminal repaired. Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if you cannot show the warranty card or if the malfunction or damage has resulted from improper use.
- Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if the malfunction has resulted from the use of devices or consumable that are not specified by NTT DoCoMo.

#### ■ The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired

The FOMA terminal may be unable to be repaired if the water reaction is found on the seal, if corrosion is found to result from water exposure, condensation or perspiration, or if the internal board is damaged or deformed. Even if the FOMA terminal can be repaired, a charge will be made as the repair is not under warranty.

#### ■ After the warranty period has expired

You can request to have your FOMA terminal repaired, although a charge will be made for the repair.

#### ■ Stock period of parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of six years following the termination of production. The repair can be performed during the stock period. The repair may still be able to be performed even after the stock period has expired. Call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

## ■ IMPORTANT

- Do not attempt to adapt the FOMA terminal or its accessories by yourself.
  - Doing so may cause fire, injury or malfunction.
  - To prevent the cross talk or network failure, the technical standard of the FOMA terminal or FOMA card (UIM) is provided by law. You are not allowed to use the FOMA terminal or FOMA card (UIM) that does not comply with the standard.
  - If you have adapted the FOMA terminal (a part has been replaced, adapted, coated, etc.) by yourself, the repair can be accepted only if you restore the FOMA terminal to the default (the factory settings). You may be rejected depending on the adaptation.
  - Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if the malfunction or damage has resulted from adaptation.

- Do not peel off the model name seal attached to the FOMA terminal.

The model name seal is used as the certificate verifying that the FOMA terminal complies with the technical standard. If the seal cannot be confirmed because it has been peeled off or replaced, the conformity to the technical standard cannot be established, and then the repair may be unable to be accepted.

- The settings of the functions or the information about total call time may be cleared (reset) due to the malfunction or repair of the FOMA terminal. If this is the case, make the settings again.
- Magnetic components are used for following parts of the FOMA terminal. A cash card, bank card, etc., which is easily affected by the magnetism, may become unusable if it is kept close to the components.

Used parts: speaker and earpiece speaker

- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, and take the FOMA terminal to the repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may be unable to be repaired depending on the condition.

## Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for alteration or loss of data.
- Upgrading the model or repairing your mobile phone may alter or erase the data that you have created, copied or downloaded. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for alteration or loss of data. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may replace your mobile phone with the substitute instead of repairing, when most of the data cannot be transferred to the substitute. As for your FOMA terminal, the images or melodies downloaded from the official i-mode site will be transferred when repairing. (Some contents cannot be transferred. Also, data may be unable to be transferred depending on the malfunction.)

## Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

### Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

This model phone FOMA N600i meets the MIC's technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The regulation has been established on scientific grounds in order to prevent the radio wave, that is emitted from wireless applications like mobile phones which are used near the head part of human body, from causing a hazard to human health. It employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR, and indicates the radio wave averaged absorption rate the human temporal part may absorb. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)\* averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 1W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

---

MIC: <http://www.telesoumu.go.jp/english/index.html>

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses:

<http://www.arib-empf.org/index.html>

(Japanese only)

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/product/> (Japanese only)

NEC: <http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/> (Japanese only)

---

\*: The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

### Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

THIS MODEL PHONE MEETS THE U.S. GOVERNMENT'S REQUIREMENTS FOR EXPOSURE TO RADIOWAVES.

Your wireless phone contains a radio transmitter and receiver. Your phone is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government. These limits are part of comprehensive guidelines and establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies.

The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6W/kg.\* Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the output.

Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the limit established by the U.S. government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed on position and locations (for example, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone as reported to the FCC when tested for use at the ear is 1.07W/kg, and when worn on the body, is 0.1W/kg. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements). While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the U.S. government requirement.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section at <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after search on FCC ID A98-FOMA-N600i.

For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory designated for this product or when used with an accessory that contains no metal and that positions the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body.

\* In the United States, the SAR limit for wireless mobile phones used by the public is 1.6 watts/kg (W/kg) averaged over one gram of tissue. SAR values may vary depending upon national reporting requirements and the network band.

## Declaration of Conformity

The product "FOMA N600i" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1 (b) and 3.2. The Declaration of Conformity can be found on [www.nec europe.com](http://www.nec europe.com).

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves.

Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR\* limits\*\* for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR\* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.451W/kg. While there may be differences between the SAR\* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet\*\*\* the EU requirements for RF exposure.

\*: The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

\*\* : The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

\*\*\*: Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

## Important Safety Information

### AIRCRAFT

Switch off your wireless device when boarding an aircraft or whenever you are instructed to do so by airline staff. If your device offers a 'flight mode' or similar feature consult airline staff as to whether it can be used on board.

### DRIVING

Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

### HOSPITALS

Mobile phones should be switched off wherever you are requested to do so in hospitals, clinics or health care facilities. These requests are designed to prevent possible interference with sensitive medical equipment.

### PETROL STATIONS

Obey all posted signs with respect to the use of wireless devices or other radio equipment in locations with flammable material and chemicals. Switch off your wireless device whenever you are instructed to do so by authorized staff.

### INTERFERENCE

Care must be taken when using the phone in close proximity to personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids.

#### Pacemakers

Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum separation of 15cm be maintained between a mobile phone and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. To achieve this use the phone on the opposite ear to your pacemaker and do not carry it in a breast pocket.

#### Hearing Aids

Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

#### For other Medical Devices:

Please consult your physician and the device manufacturer to determine if operation of your phone may interfere with the operation of your medical device.

# Index/Quick Manual

Index .....	168
Quick Manual.....	172

# Index

## A

Accessories	157
Adding bookmarks	69
Additional service	121
After service	163
Alarm clock	112
All lock	58
Answer setting	48
Attached file set	90
Automatic answer	52
Automatic play	91
Automatic redial	51
Automatic replay	76

## B

Bar nuisance calls service	121
Battery pack	24
Battery life	25
Inserting	24
Removing	25
Battery running out	26
Bookmark	
Add	69
Delete this	69
Edit title	69
Screen	69

## C

Calculator	113
Call data	51
Call forwarding service	120
Call rejection setting	58
Call waiting	31, 119
Camera	59
Auto timer setting	62
Front camera	60
Guide to the shooting screen	61

Movie mode	63
Photo mode	61
Rear camera	60
Zoom	62
Camera img sending	40
Certificate	67, 76
Character allocation to keypad	148
Charging	26
Check messages	119
CHR input method	53
Clear learned	53
Clock	49
Clock display	49
Color mode set	40
Color pattern	50
Common phrases	114
Component names and functions	18
Connection timeout	76

## D

Data box	101
Data communication	123
Data transfer software	157
Disp phonebook image	48
Disp. set v-phone	40
Display	20
Display image	102
Delete	102
Delete selected	102
Guide to the Picture list	103
Guide to the Title list	103
List settings	102
Slide show	103
Storage status	103
Display light	50
Displaying Home	68

Earphone/microphone with switch	115
English	28, 50

## F

Fixed common phrases list	156
FOMA card	23
FOMA card phonebook	42
Inserting/removing	23
Operational restriction function	23
PIN codes	23
FOMA card functional differences	24
FOMA N600i CD-ROM	16
FOMA USB cable	157
Frame	62

## G

Go to location	68
----------------	----

## H

Hands-free	30, 38
Home URL	76
Host selection	52

## I

Illumination	53
Image quality	40
i-mode	65
Add to phonebook	67
Check settings	76
i-mode settings	76
Reset settings	76
Starting i-mode	67
i-mode mail	78
Add folder	87
Add receiver	79
Address	79
Attach file	80
Auto-sort	87
Broadcast mail	79

Character size	90	Disp. soft info	99	Guide to the Title list	105
Check new messages	83	Downloading from Sites	98	Operation during playback	106
Check settings	91	Network set	99	Storage status	103
Compose message	78	Software info	99	Movie mode	63
Delete folder	87	Trace info	99	Select size	63
Delete received mail	88, 89	Upgrade	100	Multi Access	110
Delete sent mail	88, 89	<b>K</b>		My picture	102
Edit	88	Kuten code list	152	<b>N</b>	
Edit folder name	87	<b>L</b>		Network re-search	137
Filter	88	Language	28, 50	Network Services	117
Forward	71, 84	Last URL	68	Network switch	138
Guide to the folder list screens	86	<b>M</b>		Notify Caller ID	28
Guide to the mail detail screens	87	Mail list display	90	Notify caller ID	30
Guide to the mail list screens	86	Mail security	58, 91	Notifying/withholding caller ID	34
Mail security	91	Mail To	71	NW search mode	137
Mail settings	90	Making a call	30	<b>O</b>	
No. of messages	96	Making a Videophone call	38	Operational environment	125
Protecting received mail	88, 89	Manner mode	49	Options	157
Protecting sent mail	88, 89	Melody	106	Original manner mode	49
Quote phonebook	79	Delete	107	Overseas use	131
Reading mail messages	86	Download	72	International roaming service	132
Receive	82	Guide to the Melody list	108	Making a call	136
Receive mail selectively	83	Operation during playback	108	Network re-search	137
Reply	84	Play melody	106	Network services overseas	138
Reset settings	91	Storage status	103	Network switch	138
Save image	85	Menu function	22	NW search mode	137
Save i-mode mail	79	Menu function list	142	Operator name disp	138
Save i-motion	85	Message list display	76	PLMN setting	137
Save melody	85	Message service	73	Preparation before leaving	133
Sort	88	Check new message	75	Receiving a call	136
i-motion	104	Delete	74	Setting after returning to Japan	136
i-motion info	104	Display	73	Using the FOMA terminal at the destination	135
Play	104	Filter	74	Own dictionary	114
i-motion mail	85	Protect ON/OFF	74	Own number	28, 46
Information notification icon	21	Receive	73	<b>P</b>	
Initialize	53	Sort	74	Packet communication	124
International call	34	Movie	104	Phone To	71
Internet connection	68	Delete	104	Phonebook	41
i-αpli	97	Guide to the Preview	105	Add to phonebook	42
Auto start failure	100				
Auto start set	99				
Delete	99				

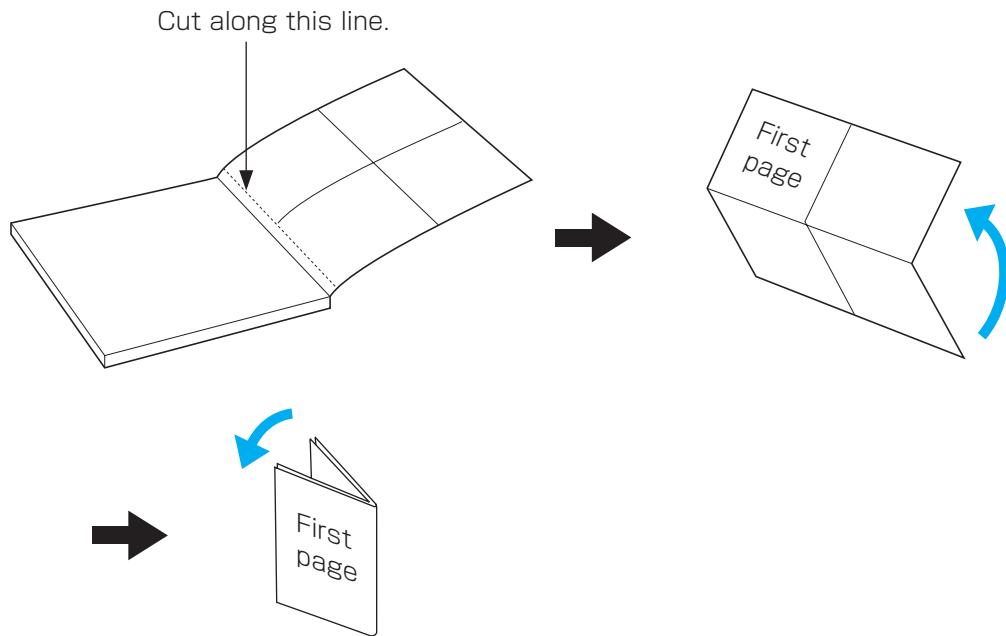
Group setting	45			Software key	21
No. of phonebook	45	<b>S</b>		Stand-by display	50
Search phonebook	44	Save image	72	Symbols and special characters	149
Photo mode	61	Schedule	111	<b>T</b>	
Auto timer setting	62	Screen memo	70	Text entry	127
Continuous mode	62	Certificate	70	Changing the input mode	128
Select frame	62	Delete	70	Delete	129
Select size	62	Display	70	Predictive conversion	130
Zoom	62	Edit title	70	Text entry (edit) screen	128
Pictographs symbols list	150	Protect ON/OFF	70	Upper case and lower case	129
PIN code	57	Save	70	Text memo	113
PIN lock	58	Screen memo	70	Time format	49
PIN setting	57	Security code		Turning FOMA terminal on/off	27
PIN1 code entry	57	Change	57	<b>U</b>	
PIN1/PIN2 code	57	Security codes	56	URL	68
PIN1/PIN2 code change	57	i-mode password	56	Delete this	68
PLMN setting	137	Network security code	56	Enter URL	68
Power save mode	50	PIN1 code and PIN2 code	56	URL history	68
Prediction	53	Security code	56	<b>V</b>	
Prefix settings	51	Select language	28, 50	Vibrator	48
Public mode	31	Service dialing No.	122	Videophone	38
Public mode (power off)	33	Services available for FOMA terminal	157	Voice auto switch	40
<b>Q</b>		Set image display	76	Voice mail service	118
Quick dialing	46	Set ringing time	48	Volume	48
Quick manual	172	Setting the Default	27	<b>W</b>	
Quotation mark	90	Side key guard	52	Wake-up display	50
		Signature	90	Warranty	163
		Site connection		Web To	71
		Viewing sites	67	WORLD CALL	34
		Smiley face symbols list	151	WORLD WING	24
		SMS center select	96	<b>Numerics</b>	
		SMS(Short Message)	92	186(Notify)/184(Withhold)	34
		Compose SMS	92		
		Copy to UIM	95		
		Delete	95, 96		
		Forward	95		
		Receive	93		
		Reply	95		
		Save	92		
		SMS report request	93		
		SMS(Short Message) report	92		

**【MEMO】**

# Quick Manual

## ■ How to use the Quick Manual

- The Quick Manual describes the basic operations and displays of the FOMA terminal. The Quick Manual (Overseas Use) also describes the necessary settings and the basic operations for overseas use.
- You can tear it out of this manual and fold it for ease of use.
- Detach one page at a time so that you do not tear other pages. Take care not to hurt yourself.



### For inquiries

(DoCoMo Information Center)

For DoCoMo mobile phone  
or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **151** (toll free)  
(in Japanese only)

\*You cannot call this number from  
an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

**0120-005-250**  
(toll free) (in English)

\*Can be called from DoCoMo mobile  
phone and PHS.

### For malfunctions

For DoCoMo mobile phone  
or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **113** (toll free)  
(in Japanese only)

\*You cannot call this number from  
an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

**0120-800-000**  
(toll free) (in Japanese only)

\*Can be called from DoCoMo mobile  
phone and PHS.  
\*Check the phone number carefully  
before dialing.

## Phonebook Search Phonebook

1. → "Phonebook search" → Select the search method
2. Search by specifying the criteria
  - "Reading search": Enter a part of the reading\* →
  - "Name search": Enter a part of the name\* →
  - "Phone No. search": Enter a part of the phone number\* →
  - "Group search": Select the group →
  - "Memory No. (Phone)": Enter the memory no. of Phone →
  - "Memory No. (UIM)": Enter the memory no. of UIM →
  - "Column search": Select from "ア column" to "ワ column",  
"All", or "Others" →

\*: You can search even if you do not enter everything.

3. to select a name from the search result list →

## Phonebook Edit/Delete Phonebook Data

### Edit the phonebook data

1. Display the phonebook data to edit
2. → [Left] → "Edit data" → Edit the items → [Left]

### Delete the phonebook data

1. Display the phonebook data to delete
2. → [Left] → "Delete data" → "This phonebook"

## Phonebook Add to Phonebook

1. → "Add to phonebook" → "Phone" or "UIM"
  2. Enter name → Check the reading and edit if required
  3. Select items and enter or select items
    - Phone number
    - E-mail address
    - Group (0 to 19)\*1
    - Image\*2
    - Call rejection ("ON"/"OFF")\*2
    - Memory number (001 to 500)\*3
- \*1: For FOMA card (UIM), Group 0 to 10  
\*2: Cannot register for FOMA card (UIM)  
\*3: For FOMA card (UIM), number 001 to 050
4. [Left] to save and finish

### Add data from the received call/redial record

1. to display the received call/ to display the redial list  
→ Select the number to add to phonebook
2. [Left] → "Add to phonebook"

## Text entry Switch Upper/Lower case and Full/Half pitch

1. While on text edit screen, [Left]
2. Select an item
  - To switch to upper/lower case: "Upper case" or "Lower case"
  - To switch to full/half pitch: "Full pitch" or "Half pitch"

## Text entry Enter Text

<Example: Enter "鈴木">

- three times ("す") → → three times, ("す")  
→ twice ("き") → → select "鈴木" from the candidates →

## Camera Shoot Photo (still image)

1. [Left] → (Camera) → "Photo mode"
2. Display the subject → or [Camera] to shoot → →

## Camera Shoot Movie

1. [Left] → (Camera) → "Movie mode"
2. Display the subject → or to start shooting
3. or to stop shooting → →

## Camera Make/Receive a videophone call

### Make a videophone call

1. Enter the phone number →
2. If the other party's phone has videophone function, talk by videophone → After talking,

### Receive a videophone call

1. When there is an incoming call,   
To answer using substitutive image,
2. After talking,

4

## Operation while in videophone call

- : Switch to hands-free/Cancel
- [Right]: Switch front/rear camera

## Mail Send/Receive Mail

### Send mail

1. [Right] → "Compose message"
2. Input address
  - Select the To field, enter the mail address or [Left], select "Address menu" → "Quote phonebook" to select the address from phonebook →
3. Input subject/message
  - Select the Subject/Message field, input text →
4. [Left] → "Send"

### Display a received mail

1. [Right] → "Inbox" → Select a folder → Select the mail to display

5

## Network services Voice Mail service

### Check if there is new Voice Mail message

1. [Left] → (Service) → "Check messages"

### Services available for the FOMA terminal

Collect call (the receiver pays for the call)	(No area code) 1 06
Directory assistance for general phones	(No area code) 1 04
and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay)	
*Phone number cannot be provided if it is not listed in directory.	
Telegram (pay)	(No area code) 1 15
*8:00 am to 10:00 pm	
Time (pay)	(No area code) 1 17
Weather forecast (pay)	Area code - 1 17
Police emergency	(No area code) 1 10
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency	(No area code) 1 19
Maritime distress call	(No area code) 1 18
Emergency Message Recording System (pay)	(No area code) 1 71

\* Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.

6

## WORLD CALL (DoCoMo's international call service)

Dial 009130-010- country code - area code - phone number and

If the area code starts with a zero "0", omit the first zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

\*FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to "WORLD CALL" when they subscribe to the FOMA service. (This excludes subscribers who indicated that they did not require the service.)

7



# FOMA® N600i

## Quick Manual (Overseas Use)

**For inquiries about loss, theft and total charge used overseas**

**For malfunctions overseas**

<DoCoMo Information Center> (24 hours)  
● Universal number

International call identifier for universal number (Table 1)

**-800-0120-0151**

\*You may be charged for the local call in the destination.

● If the above universal number cannot be called

International call access number of the destination (Table 2)

**-81-3-5366-3114**

\*You will be charged for the international call to Japan.

\*If you are calling from N600i, dial +81-3-5366-

3114. (To enter "+", press "0" one second or more.)

\*For International call identifier for universal number (Table 1)/Country codes for major destination (Table 2), refer to P.7.

<Network technical operation center> (24 hours)

● Universal number

International call identifier for universal number (Table 1)

**-800-5931-8600**

\*You may be charged for the local call in the destination.

● If the above universal number cannot be called

International call access number of the destination (Table 2)

**-81-3-6718-1414**

\*You will be charged for the international call to Japan.

\*Numbers listed in Table 1 and 2 may change.

\*If you are calling from N600i, dial +81-3-6718-1414.

(To enter "+", press "0" one second or more.)

\*For International call identifier for universal number (Table 1)/Country codes for major destinations (Table 2), refer to P.7.

## Overseas use Before Using the Phone

- When first using the phone after moving from Japan to another country, switch the phone on again.
- The following table shows the available service differences between the networks:

	Make/receive voice call	Make/receive video-phone call	i-mode	Receive Message R/F	Send/receive i-mode mail	Packet communication for PC, etc.	Send/receive SMS
3G	○	○	○	○*2	○	×	○
GPRS	○	×	○	○*2	○	×	○
GSM	○	×	×	×	×	×	○

○ : Available.      × : Not available.

\*1: If there is an incoming videophone call, the phone does not receive the call. When making a call, the phone automatically calls again by voice call if the "Voice auto switch" is "ON".

\*2: You cannot receive MessageF.

\*Even if indicated "○" in the above table, the service may not be available depending on the network operator and the area. 1

## Overseas use Preparation before Leaving

To use the FOMA terminal overseas, FOMA card (green) must be inserted.

### ■ Set remote operation

To use the network services overseas, you need to set remote operation setting in Japan beforehand.

① ② ③ ④ → ①

### ■ Set i-mode

[While in Japan]

● → "iMenu" → "English" → "Options" → "International Settings" → "Yes"

[From overseas]

● → "iMenu" → "English" → "International Settings" → "Yes"

## Overseas use Make a Call

### ■ Call Japanese mobile phone/landline phone from destination

① one second or more to display "+" → ② ①  
→ Phone number with the first "0" removed from the area code → ③

### ■ Call other WORLD WING/WORLD WALKER users

① one second or more to display "+" → ② ①  
→ Phone number with the first "0" removed from the area code → ③

### ■ Call a local phone number in the destination

Dial the phone number from the area code → ③

### ■ Call mobile phone/landline phone of other countries from destination

① one second or more to display "+" → Country code  
→ Phone number with the first "0" removed from the area code → ③

## Overseas use Receive a Call

### Receive a Call

[Voice call]

When there is an incoming call, or

[Videophone call]

To answer using camera image,

To answer using substitutive image,

### Other party's procedure to call you

[From Japan]

090-XXXX-XXXX or 080-XXXX-XXXX

[From countries other than Japan]

International access number -81 (Japanese country code)

-90-XXXX-XXXX

or -80-XXXX-XXXX

4

## Overseas use Network Settings

### Set network switch method

Setting at time of purchase: "3G"

1. [Left] → (Settings) → "Connection setting" →

"Network switch"

2. Select the item to set

Item	Overseas	In Japan
Auto-matic	Connects to 3G network first	Connects to FOMA network
3G	Connects only to 3G network	Connects to FOMA network
GSM	Connects only to GSM/GPRS	Does not connect to any network

5

### Set network search mode

Setting at time of purchase: "Automatic"

1. [Left] → (Settings) → "Connection setting" →

"NW search mode"

2. "Manual" → Select a network operator

## Overseas use Use Network Services

### Operate Voice Mail and Call Forwarding services

1. one second or more to display "+" →

2. Dial the following:

[Voice Mail]

To play new message

To play saved message, change settings, etc.

To start Voice Mail service

To stop Voice Mail service

[Call Forwarding]

To start Call Forwarding

To stop Call Forwarding

6

## Overseas use Country Codes of Major Destinations

As of February, 2006

Destination	Number	Destination	Number
United States	1	Canada	1
United Kingdom	44	Korea	82
Italy	39	Greece	30
Indonesia	62	Singapore	65
Australia	61	Switzerland	41

\*For country codes of other destinations and detailed information, check the DoCoMo website.

## Overseas use Universal Number International Call Identifiers of Major Destinations (Table 1)

Destination	Number	Destination	Number
United States	011	Korea	001
United Kingdom	00	Singapore	001
Italy	00	Switzerland	00
Australia	0011	Thailand	001
Canada	011	Taiwan	00

\*For access codes of other destinations and detailed information, check the DoCoMo website.

## Overseas use International Call Access Numbers of Major Destinations (Table 2)

Destination	Number	Destination	Number
United States	011	Canada	011
United Kingdom	00	Korea	001
Italy	00	Greece	00
Indonesia	001	Singapore	001
Australia	0011	Switzerland	00

\*For access codes of other destinations and detailed information, check the DoCoMo website.

7

## Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, do not forget to consider the feelings of people around you.

### Turn off your FOMA terminal when you are:

- In a place where it is prohibited to use a mobile phone

It is prohibited to use a mobile phone in some places. Turn off your FOMA terminal in:

· An airplane · A hospital

※ Turn off your FOMA terminal in a lobby or waiting room as well as in a hospital ward in case that the electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.

- Driving

Using the FOMA terminal prevents you from driving safely.

※ Stop the car in a safe place before using the phone, or use the Public mode.

- In a crowded place such as rush-hour train, where somebody nearby may be using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.

- In a public place such as theater, cinema, or museum

Using the FOMA terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

### Mind where you use your FOMA terminal and how loud your voice or the ring tone is

- If you use your FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as restaurant or hotel lobby, mind how loud your voice is, etc.

- Take care not to disturb other people when you use your FOMA terminal in a public place.

### Respect privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

### These functions enable you to be well-mannered

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute all the sounds of the FOMA terminal.

#### [Manner mode/Original manner mode] → p.49

Manner mode mutes the sounds of the FOMA terminal such as the keypad sounds and the ring tone. You can customize Manner mode by changing the settings of the Record message function, vibrator or ring tone (Original manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

#### [Public mode (Driving mode/Power off)] → p.31, p.33

The FOMA terminal announces to the caller that you are driving and cannot answer the phone, and then terminates the call. The ring tone does not sound, which means that you can drive safely

#### [Vibrator] → p.48

The FOMA terminal vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.

You can also use optional services such as Voice Mail service (p.118) and Call Forwarding service (p.120).

At "ドコモ e サイト" (e-site), you can make various changes in your subscriptions such as the address and price plan, and also request brochures to be sent to you.

I-mode:

i Menu ⇒ 料金&お申込 ⇒ ドコモ e サイト

Packet communication free

PC:

My DoCoMo (<https://www.mydocomo.com/>) ⇒ 各種手続き (ドコモ e サイト)

※To access e-site via I-mode, your "Network security code" is required.

※The packet communication fee is free when accessing e-site via I-mode. However, accessing from overseas will be charged.

※To access e-site via PC, "My DoCoMo ID" and "Password" are required.


※If you have no "Network security code", "My DoCoMo ID" and "Password", or unfortunately forgot them, please feel free to contact inquiries shown below.

※Depending on your contracts, you may not be able to access e-site.

※You may not be able to access e-site due to system maintenance, etc.

### For inquiries (DoCoMo Information Center)

■From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

 (No prefix) **151** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■From an ordinary (landline) phone:

 **0120-005-250** (toll free) (in English)

※Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

### For inquiries overseas about loss, theft and total charge used

(Docomo Information Center) (24 hours)

●Universal number

International Call Identifier for  
universal number (Table 1)

**-800-0120-0151**

※You may be charged for the local call in the destination.

●If the above universal number cannot be called

International call access number  
of the destination (Table 2)

**-81-3-5366-3114**\*

※You will be charged for the international call to Japan.

※If you are calling from N600i, dial +81-3-5366-3114.

(To enter "+", press "0" one second or more.)

※For International call identifier for universal number (Table 1)/

Country codes for major destinations (Table 2), refer to p.134 of the manual.



Don't forget your cellular phone...or your manners!

○When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration to others around you.

## Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation



To protect the environment, return used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailers, or a recycling agency.

This manual is made of recycled paper.



This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'06.02 (1st Edition)  
MDY-000032-EAA0

# Manual for Data Communication

This manual includes the required information for data communication using FOMA N600i and how to install "N600i communication setting file" and "FOMA PC setting software" in the CD-ROM.

# Table of contents

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal .....	2
Before Using .....	2
Checking the Procedure.....	3
Setting the PC.....	4
About the FOMA PC Setting Software .....	8
How to Set Various Settings .....	10
Executing Set Data Communication .....	13
W-TCP Settings.....	15
Access Point Name (APN) Settings .....	17
Setting up Dial-up Network .....	18
Setting up Dial-up.....	22
AT Command List .....	30

## Description of Windows

- Windows® 98 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE stands for Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
- Windows® Me stands for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 2000 Professional stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- This manual describes Windows® 98 and Windows® 98SE as Windows 98.
- This manual describes Windows® Millennium Edition as Windows Me.
- This manual describes Windows® 2000 Professional as Windows 2000.
- This manual describes Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition as Windows XP.

### ● Operations on Windows XP

The contents of this manual are based on Windows XP with Service Pack 2.  
The procedures or screens may vary by your environment.

- In this manual for FOMA N600i, the FOMA N600i is described as the FOMA terminal.
- It is prohibited to reprint the whole or part of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual may change without prior notification.

## About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

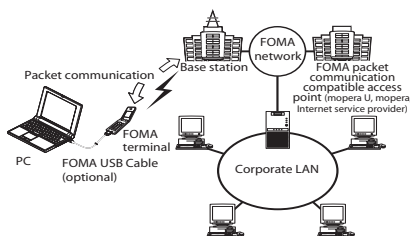
You can connect your FOMA terminal to a PC and perform packet communication.

- Packet communication  
Data is received at 384kbps max and sent at 64kbps max. Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. The communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

### ■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera".



### NOTE

- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with 64K data communication. "64K data communication" is displayed as a communication method for "Easy settings" (p.10) in "FOMA PC setting software", but 64K data communication cannot be used.
- Data communication performed by packet communication connected to a PC is not available overseas.

## Notice before using

### Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.

DoCoMo Internet service "mopera U" or "mopera" is available. "mopera U" is a paid service for which you need to subscribe.

"mopera" is a free service for which you do not need to subscribe.

## Before Using

### Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is shown below:

PC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive</li> <li>• USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1)</li> <li>• Display resolution of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high. High Color (65,536 colors) and higher recommended</li> </ul>
OS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)</li> </ul>
Required memory*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Windows 98, Windows Me: 32M bytes or more*</li> <li>• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or more*</li> <li>• Windows XP: 128M bytes or more*</li> </ul>
Hard disk space*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5M bytes or more</li> </ul>

\*: The required memory and necessary hard disk space depend on the system configuration.

### NOTE

- You may download the "FOMA N600i communication setting file" (drivers) from the DoCoMo website and install it.
- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with FAX communication.

## Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and PC, are required:

- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Bundled CD-ROM "FOMA N600i CD-ROM"

### NOTE

- Purchase the dedicated "FOMA USB Cable".  
The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

## Checking the Procedure

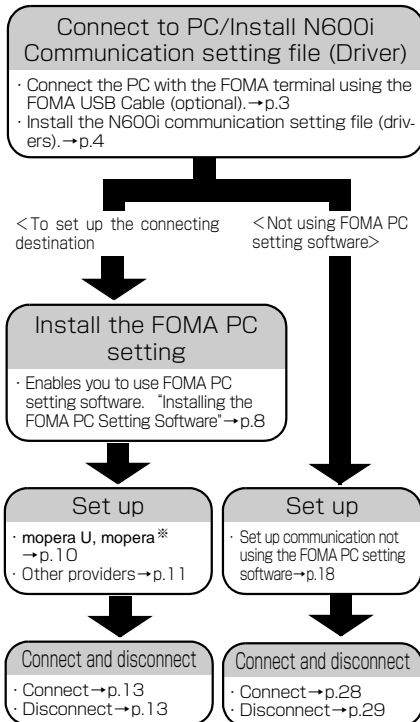
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA packet communication.

### ■ About the "FOMA N600i CD-ROM" provided

- The CD-ROM contains the "N600i communication setting file (drivers)" and the "FOMA PC setting software".
- The N600i communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with PC via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet communication. Installing the N600i communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows. Using the FOMA PC setting software allows you to easily set up packet communication and create a dial-up connection.

## Flow Chart for completing the data communication setup

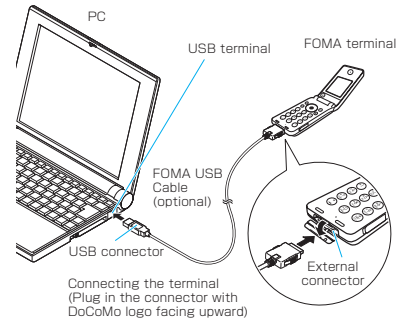
This section describes preparation to use packet communication.




\*\* : To use Internet connecting the FOMA terminal and a PC, "mopera U" (you need to subscribe) is useful, which supports broadband connection, international roaming, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use "mopera" for which you do not need to subscribe, you can access the Internet immediately.

## Connecting the devices



The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional):



- 1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal
- 2 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of your PC
- 3 Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, and then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable straight until you hear a click

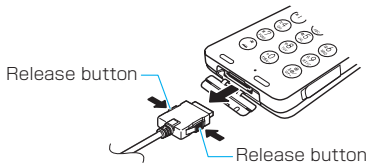
"" appears on the FOMA terminal display when the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

### NOTE

- Do not plug the FOMA USB Cable connector forcibly. You cannot connect the cable without the correct direction and angle. If you plug the cable properly, it will be smoothly inserted without stress. If it is not done smoothly, stop plugging in forcibly, and make sure of the connector shape and direction once again.
- "" appears on the FOMA terminal display when the N600i communication setting file for data communication is installed and the connection with PC is recognized. Before the N600i communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and "" does not appear.

## Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable (optional)



- 1 Pull it out straight pressing and holding the release buttons of the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable
- 2 Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the PC
- 3 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

### NOTE

- Provide enough interval between attaching and removing the FOMA USB Cable so that the PC can correctly recognize the FOMA terminal.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable during data communication. Doing so may disconnect the communication, cause wrong operation, or delete data.

## Setting the PC

This section describes the steps from connecting to PC to installing the N600i communication setting file (drivers).

## Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the PC
- 2 Start up Windows and insert the "FOMA N600i CD-ROM" into the CD-ROM drive of your PC

- 3 Turn on the FOMA terminal, and then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the PC to your FOMA terminal

### For Windows 98/Me

The "新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード" (Add new hardware wizard) screen appears.

### For Windows 2000/XP

The "新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード" (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

## Installing the N600i communication setting file (drivers)

- When installing N600i communication setting file in Windows 2000/Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- The installation procedure for the N600i communication setting file depends on the Operating System. Refer to the description for the Operating System on your PC. For Windows 98 and Windows Me refer to the following. For Windows 2000 and Windows XP, proceed to p.5.

### ● For Windows 98/Me

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

Attaching the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal in Step 3 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.4) automatically displays the "新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード" (Add new hardware wizard) dialog box.

### For Windows 98

Click "次へ" (Next)

- 2 Select "ドライバの場所を指定する (詳しい知識のある方向け)" (Specify driver location (for advanced users)), and then click "次へ" (Next)

### For Windows 98

Select "使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)" (Search for a driver suitable for the device in use (recommended)), and then click "次へ" (Next)



- 3 Select "使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)" (Search for the driver suitable for the device in use (recommended)), check "検索場所の指定" (Specify the search location) and click "参照" (Browse) to specify the folder to search, and then click "次へ" (Next)

The path is "<CD-ROM Drive name>:\\$USBDriver¥Win98".

The CD-ROM drive name depends on your PC.

#### For Windows 98

Check "検索場所の指定" (Specify search location) and then click "次へ" (Next)  
Select "更新されたドライバ(推奨)" (Update driver (recommended)) and click "次へ" (Next)

- 4 Confirm the driver name and click "次へ" (Next)

"FOMA N600i" appears here.

- 5 When the message "新しいハードウェアのインストールが完了しました。" (The new hardware has been completely installed.) appears, click "完了" (Finish)

#### For Windows 98

The message "新しいハードウェアデバイスに必要なソフトウェアがインストールされました。" (The software necessary for the new hardware device has been installed.) appears.

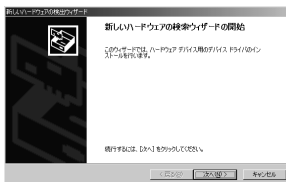
## 6 Install other drivers

Follow the Steps 1 to 5 to install all the other six drivers (p.7). If the "新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード" (Add new hardware wizard) does not appear after Step 5, it means that all the drivers have been completely installed. Proceed to "Checking the installed driver" (p.6).

## ● For Windows 2000

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

Attaching the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal in Step 5 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.4) displays the following dialog box:



- 2 Click "次へ" (Next)

- 3 Select "デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)" (Search for a driver suitable for the device (recommended)) and click "次へ" (Next)

- 4 Check "場所を指定" (Specify location) and click "次へ" (Next)

- 5 Specify the folder to search and click "OK"

The path is "<CD-ROM Drive name>:\\$USBdriver¥Win2000".

The CD-ROM drive name depends on your PC.

- 6 Confirm the driver name and click "次へ" (Next)

"FOMA N600i" appears here.

When the message "デジタル署名が見つかりませんでした" (The digital signature was not found) appears

Click "はい" (Yes) and continue installing (it does not affect the installation and PC operation).

- 7 When the message "新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了" (The find new hardware wizard is finished) appears, click "完了" (Finish)

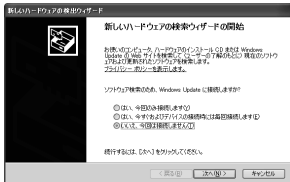
## 8 Install other drivers

Follow the Steps 1 to 7 to install all the other three drivers (p.7). If the "新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード" (Find new hardware wizard) does not appear after Step 7, it means that all the drivers have been completely installed. Proceed to "Checking the installed driver" (p.6).

## ● For Windows XP

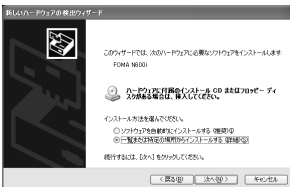
### 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

Attaching the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal in Step 3 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.4) displays the following dialog box:



### 2 Select "いいえ、今後は接続しません" (No, I will access Windows Update later on) and click "次へ" (Next)

### 3 Select "一覧または特定の場所からインストールする(詳細)" (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click "次へ" (Next)



### 4 Select "次の場所で最適なドライバを検索する" (Search for the suitable driver in the following location), uncheck "リムーバブルメディア (フロッピー、CD-ROM など) を検索" (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM), check "次の場所を含める" (Include the following location) to specify a folder to search, and then click "次へ" (Next)

The path is "<CD-ROM Drive name>: ¥USB Driver¥Win2000". The CD-ROM drive name depends on your PC. The driver is the same as that of Windows 2000.

When the message "Windowsロゴテストに合格していません" (It has not passed the Windows-logo test) appears

Click "続行" (Continue) and continue installing. (It does not affect the installation and PC operation).

### 5 When the message "新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了" (The find new hardware wizard is finished) appears, click "完了" (Finish)

### 6 Install other drivers

Follow the Steps 1 to 5 to install all the other three drivers (p.7). If the "新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード" (Find new hardware wizard) does not appear after Step 5, it means that all the drivers have been completely installed. When all the drivers are installed, the task bar indicator displays the message "新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。" (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to "Checking the installed driver" (p.6).

## Checking the installed driver

Check that the N600i communication setting file has been correctly installed.

### 1 Open the Control Panel of Windows

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000

Select "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

For Windows XP

Select "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

### 2 Open "システム" (System) from Control Panel

For Windows Me

If the "システム" (System) icon does not appear in Control Panel, click "すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する" (Display all Control Panel options)

For Windows XP

Click the "システム" (System) icon in "パフォーマンスとメンテナンス" (Performance and maintenance)

### 3 Open the device manager

For Windows 98/Me

Click the "デバイスマネージャ" (Device Manager) tab

For Windows 2000/XP

Click the "ハードウェア" (Hardware) tab and then click "デバイスマネージャ" (Device Manager)

## 4 Click each device to check the installed driver name

Check that all the driver names are displayed under "ポート(COMとLPT)" (Ports (COM & LPT)), "ユニバーサルシリアルバス (USB) コントローラ" (Universal Serial Bus (USB) Controller) and "モデム" (Modem). Check the driver name, and proceed to "Setting up Dial-up Network"(p.18).

(Windows XP)



Device name	Driver name
ポート (COMとLPT)	・ FOMA N600i OBEX Port
モデム	・ FOMA N600i
ユニバーサルシリアルバス (USB) コントローラ or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ	・ FOMA N600i ・ FOMA N600i Modem* ・ FOMA N600i OBEX*

\* : Windows 98/Windows Me only

### NOTE

- When you check the above, if not all the driver names appear or if you have installed an improper communication setting file for your Operating System, follow the uninstall instructions (p.7) to delete the N600i communication setting file and install the proper file.

## Uninstalling the N600i communication setting file

If necessary (e.g. when Windows has been upgraded), uninstall the drivers as follows. The following takes uninstalling from Windows XP for example.

- If you attempt to execute "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add/remove programs) while connecting to the FOMA terminal, the uninstall program does not run and a message appears notifying that the FOMA terminal is connected.
- When uninstalling N600i communication setting file in Windows 2000/Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

**1** If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable (optional), remove the FOMA USB Cable

**2** Start "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add/remove programs) on Windows

Select "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add/remove programs)

**3** Select "FOMA N600i USB" and click "変更と削除" (Change and delete)

**4** Click "OK" to uninstall

To cancel uninstallation, click "キャンセル" (Cancel).

**5** Click "はい" (Yes) to restart Windows

Now the uninstallation is completed.

If you clicked "いいえ" (No), restart Windows manually.

### NOTE

- If "FOMA N600i USB" does not appear in "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add/remove programs) on Windows, follow the steps below:

① Select "スタート" (Start) → "マイコンピュータ" (My computer)

② Right-click the CD-ROM icon, and then select "開く" (Open)

③ Select "USB Driver" → "Win98" or "Win2000" folder in the CD-ROM

④ Double-click "n600i\_un.exe"

\* It may be displayed as "n600i\_un" depending on the PC settings.

## About the FOMA PC Setting Software

FOMA PC setting software allows you to set up easily as follows:

- You can also set up packet communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. → p.18



See p.3 for the connection between the FOMA terminal and PC.

### かんたん設定 (Easy settings)

The guide walks you through the procedures for "Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication" and "W-TCP setting".

### W-TCPの設定 (W-TCP Settings)

The settings optimize the communication settings of PC before using "FOMA packet communication".

To make the most of the communication performance, it is necessary to optimize the communication settings by making the W-TCP settings.

### 接続先 (APN) の設定 (Access Point Name (APN) Settings)

Set the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.

A normal phone number is not used for the FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field. For using mopera, APN: mopera.ne.jp is registered as the first cid, and for using mopera U, APN: mopera.net is registered as the third cid, but when connecting to other providers or corporate LAN, you will need to make the APN settings.

cid [Context Identifier] ... a number for managing the access point name (APN) for a packet communication to register on the FOMA terminal. It is set when registering the APN to the FOMA terminal.

#### NOTE

- If the FOMA terminal is recognized as a larger number than COM20 in the N600i communication setting file, APN information cannot be obtained nor written when setting APN. In this case, use "Hyper terminal" for setting. "Setting up the access point (APN)" → p.20

## Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check operating environment prior to installing the FOMA PC setting software. → p.2
- When installing the "FOMA PC Setting Software" on Windows 2000/Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- If you install "FOMA PC setting software" enclosed in the FOMA terminal earlier of the 600i Series, uninstall it in advance.

**1** Insert the bundled CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of the PC

**2** Right-click the CD-ROM icon in "マイコンピュータ" (My Computer) and select "開く" (Open)

**3** Open "FOMA\_PCSET" folder and double-click "start.exe"

**4** Click "次へ" (Next)

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click "キャンセル" (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation.

If a message appears indicating that Previous W-TCP setting software or Previous APN setting software is installed, see p.9.

**5** Upon confirming the license agreement of "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), click "はい" (Yes) to agree to it

If you click "いいえ" (No) and then click "はい" (Yes), the installation is canceled.

## 6 Click "次へ" (Next)

Select whether or not you want "W-TCP settings" to reside in the Task Tray.

This is a function to set up/cancel optimization of "W-TCP communication", and it is recommended that you make it reside in the Task Tray.

If there is no problem, click "次へ" (Next) with "タスクトレイに常駐する" (Make it reside in the Task Tray) checked  to continue installing. Even if you do not check "タスクトレイに常駐する" (Make it reside in the Task Tray) here, you will be able to change the settings by selecting "メニュー" (Menu), "W-TCP設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる" (Let W-TCP settings reside in the Task Tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.

(Note): This option is disabled when the "タスクトレイに常駐する" (Make it reside in the task tray) setting is activated.



The W-TCP setting will appear in the task tray that is usually located at the bottom right corner of the desktop.

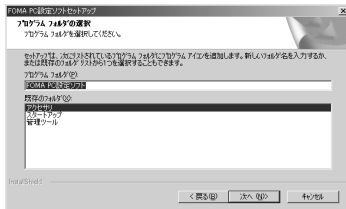
## 7 Select the install destination and click "次へ" (Next)

If you want to change the destination, click "参照" (Browse), specify any folder and then click "次へ" (Next).

You can select another drive if you do not have enough hard disk space, but generally the default setting is recommended.

## 8 Check the name of program folder and click "次へ" (Next)

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click "次へ" (Next).



## 9 Click "完了" (Finish)

When the setup process is completed, the "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) screen will automatically appear. You can specify other settings.

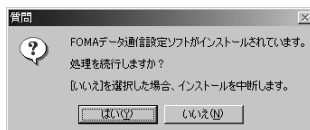
## Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the Previous W-TCP setting software is installed >



- Open "アプリケーション (プログラム) の追加と削除" (Add/Remove programs) to uninstall the old W-TCP setting software.

<If the Previous APN setting software is installed >



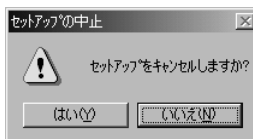
- If you click "はい" (Yes), the previous APN settings software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC settings software will be installed.

<If the FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software) is already installed >



- Click "OK", and the install is interrupted. Open "アプリケーション (プログラム) の追加と削除" (Add/Remove programs), uninstall the already installed "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), and then reinstall the software.
- Perform the same operation if the older version of "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) is installed.

<If the "キャンセル" (Cancel) button is clicked during installation >



- If you want to continue the installation, click "いいえ" (No). If you intend to stop the procedure, click "はい" (Yes).

## How to Set Various Settings

The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and the Communication setting file needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC.

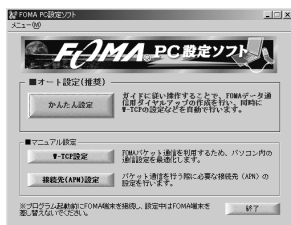
- If the FOMA terminal is recognized as the number higher than COM20, the "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software) will not run.

### 1 Select "スタート" (Start) →"プログラム" (Program) →"FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

#### For Windows XP

Select "スタート" (Start) →"すべてのプログラム" (All programs) →"FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

Launching the FOMA PC setting software displays the following screen:



### Easy settings: "Packet communication setting by using mopera U or mopera"

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 384kbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet service "mopera U" or "mopera" will be used as a provider. Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 384kbps for receiving and up to 64kbps for sending (there are exceptions for some machine types). Since you will be charged for the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.
- DoCoMo Internet service "mopera U" or "mopera" is available. "mopera U" is a pay service for which you need to apply. "mopera" is a free service for which you do not need to apply.
- Note that the communication charge can become high if "packet communication" is used to exchange large volumes of data e.g. to view website containing images or to download files.

### 1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings)

### 2 Select "パケット通信" (Packet communication) and click "次へ" (Next)

### 3 Select "[mopera U]への接続" (mopera U access) or "[mopera]への接続" (mopera access) and click "次へ" (Next)

See p.11 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

### 4 Click "OK"

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal that is connected to the PC. Wait a while.

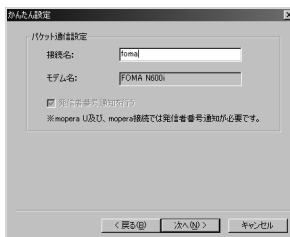
### 5 Enter the connection name and click "次へ" (Next)

You can specify the name of the access point.

Enter a name easy to recognize in the "接続名" (Connection Name) column.

Enter the connection name correctly paying attention to upper/lower cases.

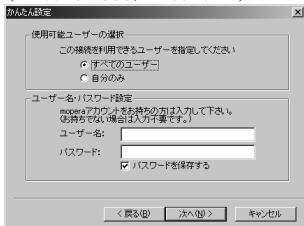
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/:\*?!<>| " (half-pitch only).



## 6 Specify a user name and password and click "次へ" (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



Select the user for Windows 2000/Windows XP.

Selecting "すべてのユーザー" (All Users) sets the connection for all users on Windows.

When setting the user name and password, enter the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

## 7 Check "最適化を行う" (Optimize the setting) and click "次へ" (Next)

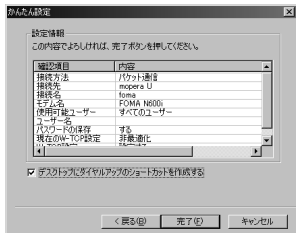
Optimize "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP settings) required for "Packet communication". If they are already optimized, this screen will not appear.

## 8 Check the settings and click "完了" (Finish)

The contents will be listed. Make sure that all the settings are correct.

Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates the shortcut icon.

To change the settings, click "戻る" (Back).



## 9 Click "OK"

You need to restart Windows to enable the changes made to the settings. If the restart screen appears, click "はい" (YES). The communication is carried out. → p.13

## Easy settings: "Use other providers to set packet communication"

### 1 Click "かんたん設定" (Easy settings)

### 2 Select "パケット通信" (Packet communication) and click "次へ" (Next)

### 3 Select "その他" (Other) and click "次へ" (Next)

### 4 Click "OK"

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal that is connected to the PC. Wait a while.

### 5 Specify the packet communication settings

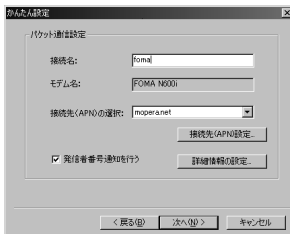
After the terminal setting is completely acquired, the "パケット通信設定" (Packet communication settings) screen will appear.

Enter a name in "接続名" (Connection name). Enter the connection name correctly paying attention to upper/lower cases.

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/ : \* ? ! < > | " (half-pitch only).

Checking "発信者番号通知を行う" (Notify Caller ID) notifies the caller ID when communicating.

APN: mopera.net is specified for the mopera U connection and APN: mopera.ne.jp for the mopera connection by default in "接続先(APN)の選択" (Select the access point (APN)).

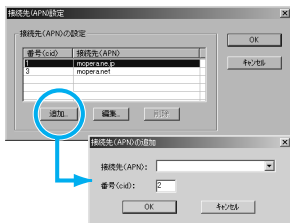


## 6 Click "接続先(APN)設定" (Specify the access point (APN))

At the time of purchase, the mopera access point name (APN) "mopera.ne.jp" is specified for cid1, and the mopera U access point name (APN) "mopera.net" is specified for cid3. Specify the access point name (APN) for cid2 or 4 to 16.

Open the "接続先 (APN) の追加" (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the "追加" (Add) button, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and then click "OK". Return to the "接続先 (APN) 設定" (Specify the access point (APN)) screen.

Only half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and dots (.) can be entered for the access point.



## 7 Select the access point (APN) and click "OK"

Returns to the screen in Step 5. The access point (APN) entered in Step 6 appears on "接続先 (APN) の選択" (Select the access point (APN)).

## 8 Confirm the Access point (APN) on "接続先 (APN) の選択" (Select the access point (APN)) and click "次へ" (Next)

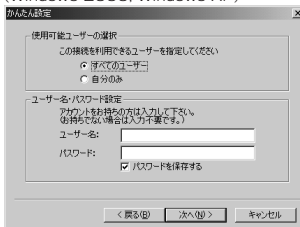
<To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings) >

Clicking "詳細情報の設定" (Set up details) displays the setup screen for "IP address"/"Name Server". If they must be entered as the provider or corporate LAN dial-up information, follow the entry directions to enter the addresses.

## 9 Specify a user name and password and click "次へ" (Next)

Select the user for Windows 2000/Windows XP. Selecting "すべてのユーザー" (All Users) sets the connection for all users on Windows.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



When setting the user name and password, enter the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

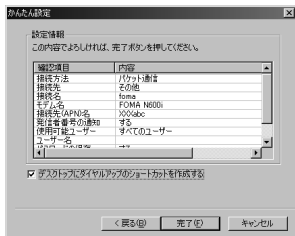
## 10 Check "最適化を行う" (Optimize the setting) and click "次へ" (Next)

Optimizes "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP settings) required for "Packet communication". If they are already optimized, this screen will not appear. Proceed to Step 11.

## 11 Check the settings and click "完了" (Finish)

The contents will be listed. Make sure that all the settings are correct. Checking "デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する" (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates the shortcut icon.

To change the settings, click "戻る" (Back).



## 12 Click "OK"

You need to restart Windows to enable the changes made to the settings. If the restart screen appears, click "はい" (YES). The communication is carried out. → p.13

## Executing Set Data Communication

- When executing data communication via FOMA USB Cable (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used when the icon is created. To connect to another FOMA terminal, the communication setting file must be installed again.

### 1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



If there is no connection icon on the desktop, follow the steps below:

#### For Windows 98 / Windows Me

Select "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dialup network) → Open the host

#### For Windows 2000

Select "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続" (Network and dialup connection) → Open the host

#### For Windows XP

Select "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワーク接続" (Network connection) → Open the host

### 2 Click "ダイヤル" (Dial) and connect

You can leave "ユーザー名" (User name) and "パスワード" (Password) blank when mopera U or mopera is selected. If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera U or mopera or you use dial-up connection, enter the "ユーザー名" (User name) and "パスワード" (Password) specified by access point.

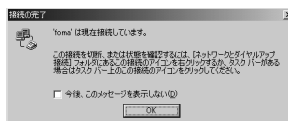
Checking "パスワードを保存する" (Save password) makes it unnecessary to enter the password next time.



### 3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click "OK"

Dialing up usually displays the following screen:

This message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled.



- During packet communication, an icon appears on the FOMA terminal display, changing by the communication conditions.



(Communicating, no data transfer)

(Communicating, starts sending data)

(Communicating, sending /receiving data)

## How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

### 1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the Task tray

The connecting screen will appear.



Dial-up icon

### 2 Click "切断" (Disconnect)



#### NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

## When this happens

- Check the following if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully:

Problem	Points to check
"FOMA N600" is not recognized by the PC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Check if your PC is equipped with the environment required (p.2).</li><li>· Check if the N600i communication setting file has been correctly installed.</li><li>· Check if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on.</li><li>· Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected.</li></ul>
Unable to connect to the access point	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>· Check if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct.</li><li>· Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected.</li><li>· If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not prefixed to the phone number.</li><li>· Check if the "フロー制御を使う" (Use the flow control) box of the modem properties is selected.</li><li>· Check if the APN is set correctly.</li><li>· If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, check with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.</li></ul>

## Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setting Software

This section describes uninstallation instructions for FOMA PC setting software.

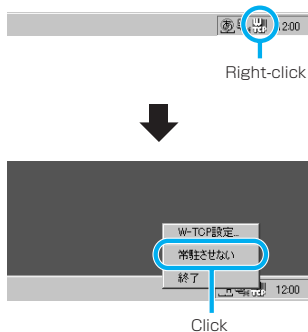
- When uninstalling the "FOMA PC Setting Software" on Windows 2000/Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

### 1 Before uninstalling

Before starting to uninstall the "FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be restored to the default settings.

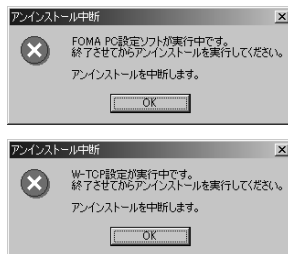
#### (1) Disable the "W-TCP settings" in the task tray

Right-click the "W-TCP icon" in the task tray located at the right-bottom of the desktop and select "常駐させない" (Disable resident)



#### (2) Exit any running program

If you try to uninstall while the "FOMA PC setting software" or "W-TCP settings" is running, the following screen will appear. Cancel the uninstallation and exit the programs.



## 2 Start "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add/remove programs) on Windows

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000

Select "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → Click the icon of "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add/remove programs) "アプリケーションの追加と削除のプロパティ" (Add/remove programs) appears on Windows 98 and Windows Me.

For Windows XP

Select "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → Click the icon of "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add/remove programs)

## 3 Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click "変更と削除" (Change and delete)

Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト"



Click here

## 4 Check the name of the program to delete and click "はい" (Yes)

Uninstallation starts.



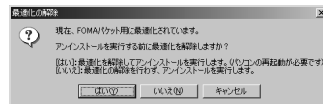
## 5 Click "OK"

Uninstallation of the "FOMA PC setting software" is completed.

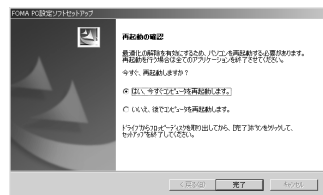


### NOTE

- Cancel "W-TCP 最適化" (Optimize W-TCP)  
The following screen appears if "W-TCP 最適化" (Optimize W-TCP) is done. To uninstall, usually click "はい" (Yes) to cancel the optimization.



W-TCP optimization will be canceled after restarting.



## W-TCP Settings

"W-TCP Settings" is a "TCP parameter setup tool" to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when "Packet communication" is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication needs to be set with this software in order to make the most of the FOMA terminal communication performance.

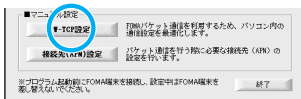
## Setting up and canceling optimization

< For Windows XP >

On Windows XP, the optimization can be set for each dial-up connection.

### 1 Start the program

- (1) To operate from "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)  
Click "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP Settings) of "マニュアル設定" (Manual setup) after starting the program



- (2) To operate from the task tray  
Click the "W-TCP icon" in the task tray located at the right-bottom of the desktop to start the program

Left-click



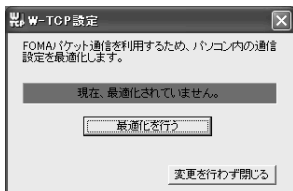
## 2 Operate as follows

Exit all the running programs and follow the screen instructions to restart the Windows. The optimized system settings become valid after the restart.

### (1) If the system settings have not been optimized

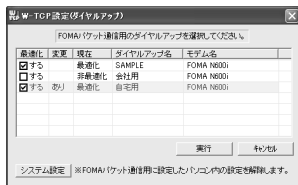
Click "最適化を行う" (Optimize)

The "W-TCP (ダイヤルアップ) 設定" (W-TCP (dial-up) Settings) screen appears. If you select the dial-up to be optimized and click "実行" (Execute), the system and dial-up settings will each be optimized.



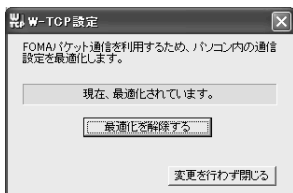
### (2) If the system settings have been optimized

The "W-TCP (ダイヤルアップ) 設定" (W-TCP (dial-up) Settings) screen appears. Change the settings if any.



### (3) To cancel optimization

Click "システム設定" (System settings). The "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP Settings) screen appears. Click "最適化を解除する" (Cancel optimization).

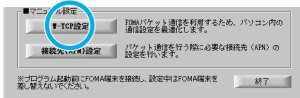


<For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000 >

## 1 Start the program

### (1) To operate from "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software)

Click "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP Settings) of "マニュアル設定" (Manual setup) after starting the program



### (2) To operate from the task tray

Click the "W-TCP icon" in the task tray located at the right-bottom of the desktop to start the program

Left-click



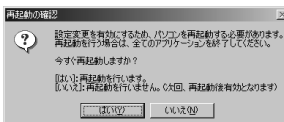
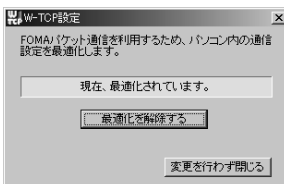
## 2 Operate as follows

### (1) If not optimized

Click "最適化を行う" (Optimize) on the "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP Settings) screen, exit all the running programs and restart the Windows to enable the optimized settings

### (2) If optimized

The message "現在、最適化されています。" (Already optimized) appears on the "W-TCP 設定" (W-TCP Settings) screen. To cancel the optimization settings e.g. if you want to connect to a terminal other than the FOMA terminal, click "最適化を解除する" (Cancel optimization). Exit all the running programs and restart the Windows to enable the cancel of optimization.

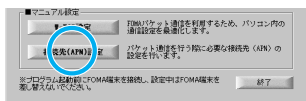


## Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 16 destinations by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 16.

- The APN setting (the access point for FOMA packet communication) is stored on the FOMA terminal. If you connect to another FOMA terminal, the APN must be registered again.
- If continuously using an APN on PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number on the FOMA terminal.
- At the time of purchase, the mopera access point name (APN) "mopera.ne.jp" is specified for cid1, and the mopera U access point name (APN) "mopera.net" is specified for cid3. Specify the access point name (APN) for cid2 or 4 to 10.

### 1 After starting "FOMA PC設定ソフト" (FOMA PC setting software), click "接続先 (APN) 設定" (Set up access point (APN))



### 2 Click "OK" on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen

Automatically accesses the FOMA terminal connected and reads the Access point (APN) information registered. It does not start if the FOMA terminal is not connected.

## 3 Set up the access point (APN)



### Adding/Editing/Deleting the access point (APN)

- **To add an access point (APN)**  
Click "追加" (Add) on the "接続先 (APN) 設定" (Set up access point (APN)) screen
- **To edit a registered access point (APN)**  
Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click "編集" (Edit) on the "接続先 (APN) 設定" (Set up access point (APN)) screen
- **To delete a registered access point (APN)**  
Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click "削除" (Delete) on the "接続先 (APN) 設定" (Set up access point (APN)) screen

You cannot delete the access points (APN) registered to cid1 and cid3 (Even if you select APN registered to cid3 and click "削除" (Delete), it is not deleted for the record and "mopera.net" remains).

### Saving to File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the "ファイル" (File) menu on the toolbar.

### Importing from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by setting from the "ファイル" (File) menu on the toolbar.

### Exporting access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal

Clicking "FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む" (Export settings into FOMA terminal) on the "接続先 (APN) 設定" (Specify the access point (APN)) allows you to export the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

## Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the "接続先 (APN) 設定" (Set up access point (APN)) screen and click "ダイヤルアップ作成" (Create dial-up).

When the screen appears for writing into the FOMA terminal, click "はい" (Yes). After finishing exporting into the access point (APN), the "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成" (Create dial-up for packet communication) screen appears.

Enter any connection name and click "アカウント・パスワードの設定" (Specify Account/Password).

Enter the user name and password (select the available user for Windows 2000 or Windows XP) and click "OK". You can leave the user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click "詳細情報の設定" (Enter details) on the "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成" (Create dial-up for packet communication), register necessary information and click "OK".

After entering the settings, click "FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む" (Export the settings to the FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start exporting.

## Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication without using the FOMA PC setting software.

### About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies with AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to specify the detailed settings and confirm (display) the contents of the settings for the "Data communication" and FOMA terminal.

## Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to "FOMA N600i" (モデム) (Modem) built in after installing the N600i communication setting file. This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.20).

### Access points < APN/cid >

- Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication. Set up APN (p.20) instead of a telephone number for connection.

- Setting APN is similar to registering a phonebook for packet communication from PC. Assign registration numbers (cid) 1 through 16 to register, which are used as a part of the access point number. At the time of purchase, the mopera access point name (APN) "mopera.ne.jp" is specified for cid1, and the mopera U access point name (APN) "mopera.net" is specified for cid3. Specify the access point name (APN) for cid2 or 4 to 16.\*1
- APN is administered by "cid (administration numbers 1 through 16)". Connected to the access point with the cid number if the access point number is set to "\*99\*\*<cid number>#".
- Specifying "\*99\*\*\*1#" as the access point number for the mopera connection or "\*99\*\*\*3#" for the mopera U connection allows you to use mopera or mopera U easily.\*2
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties' information (telephone number, etc.) to a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN Setting	Mobile phone phonebook
Data to be registered		APN	Phone number
		cid	Memory number in phonebook
		—	Other party's name
How to register	Register using PC	○ (Use the FOMA PC setting software etc.)	○ (Dedicated software required)
	Register using mobile phone	× (Cannot even confirm)	○
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up in phonebook to call
		—	Press the dial keys on the FOMA terminal to enter the telephone number to call

※1 : Set up the APN setting for the access point (Internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dial-up Network) for connection.

※2 : To connect to another Internet service provider, set up APN and register it in cid Number 2 or 4 or higher. How to set up APN and make registration→p.20

## ● To confirm COM port on Windows 98/Me

- 1 Select "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)
- 2 Open "モデム" (Modem) from Control Panel

If the "モデム" (Modem) icon does not appear in Control Panel, click "すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する" (Display all Control Panel options).



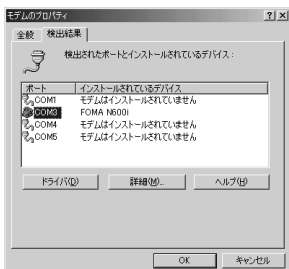
- 3 Confirm that "FOMA N600i" has been set and click the "検出結果" (Diagnostics) tab



- 4 Confirm the COM port, which is set up for "FOMA N600i", and click "OK"

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.20).

The contents and the COM port number displayed on the Properties screen depend on your PC.



## ● To confirm the COM port on Windows 2000

- 1 Select "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)
- 2 Open "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and modem options) from Control Panel



- 3 If the "所在地情報" (Address information screen) appears, enter "市外局番" (Area Code) and click "OK"
- 4 Click the "モデム" (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port described in the "接続先" (Access point) column of "FOMA N600i", and then click "OK"

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.20).

The contents and the COM port number displayed on the Properties screen depend on your PC.



## ● To confirm the COM port on Windows XP

### 1 Select "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)



### 2 Open "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and modem options) from "プリンタとその他のハードウェア" (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel



### 3 If the "所在地情報" (Address information) screen appears, enter "市外局番／エリアコード" (Area Code) and click "OK"

### 4 Click the "モデム" (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port described in the "接続先" (Access point) column of "FOMA N600i", and then click "OK"

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.20).

The contents and the COM port number displayed on the Properties screen depend on your PC.



## Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1: mopera.ne.jp cid3: mopera.net cid2, 4 to 16: not set
-----------------	--

To make the settings, you need the communication software for entering AT commands. This section describes how to set it up using "Hyper terminal" that comes with Windows.

- Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 16 access points (APN) up by assigning registration numbers cid1 through cid16 (p.18).
- At the time of purchase, the mopera access point name (APN) "mopera.ne.jp" is specified for cid1, and the mopera U access point name (APN) "mopera.net" is specified for cid3. Specify the access point name (APN) for cid2 or 4 to 16.
- Registered cid will be used as connection numbers in the dial-up connection settings.
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for an access point (APN) other than mopera U or mopera.

<Example: For Windows XP>

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal
- 2 Turn on the FOMA terminal and connect the FOMA USB Cable connected with the FOMA terminal to your PC
- 3 On your PC, select "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal

For Windows Me, Windows 2000

Select "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal)

For Windows 98

Select "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal), and then double-click "Hypertm.exe".

- 4 Select the "今後、このメッセージを表示しない" (Do not display this message again) checkbox and then click "はい" (Yes)

## 5 Enter any name in the "名前" (Name) column and click "OK"

"sample" is entered here as an example.



## 6 Select "FOMA N600i" from "接続方法" (Connection method), and click "OK"

If a COM port of "FOMA N600i" can be selected

When the COM port property is displayed, click "OK".

"COM3" is selected here as an example. See "Checking the COM port" (p.18) to confirm the actual COM port number of "FOMA N600i" to be selected in "接続方法" (Connection method).



If a COM port of "FOMA N600i" cannot be selected

Click "キャンセル" (Cancel) to close the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) screen and then follow the steps below:

- (1) Select "ファイル" (File) → "プロパティ" (Properties)
- (2) Select "FOMA N600i" in the "接続方法" (Connection method) column on the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) tab of the "sample"の プロパティ (sample Properties)
- (3) Uncheck "国/地域番号と市外局番を使う" (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)
- (4) Click "OK"



## 7 Enter the access point (APN) and press

Enter in the format of  
 AT+CGDCONT=<cid>,"PPP","APN"  
 <cid>:Enter any number from 2, 4 to 16

If cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.

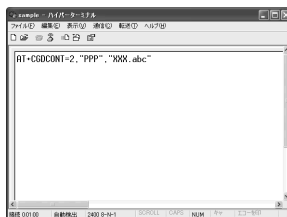
"PPP":Enter "PPP".

"APN":Enclose the access point (APN) in " " (double quotation mark).

"OK" means that setting the access point (APN) is completed.

Example:To enter APN named XXX, abc in cid No. 2

Enter  
 AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc"



## 8 Confirm that "OK" is displayed, and select "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Exit Hyper Terminal) from the "ファイル" (File) menu

You will be asked "sample"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか?" (Do you want to save the connection named "sample"?). You usually do not need to save it.

### NOTE

- The AT commands entered in "Hyper terminal" may not be displayed after Step 6 on p.21. In this case, entering ATE1 displays the AT commands entered thereafter.

### To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command

- If you reset, the access point (APN) setting on cid=1 will be restored to "mopera.ne.jp" (default setting) and cid=3 (APN) setting to "mopera.net" (default setting), and cid=2, 4 through 16 will be unregistered.

<How to enter>

AT+CGDCONT= (to reset all cid)

AT+CGDCONT=<cid> (to reset a certain cid only)

### To confirm the access point (APN) settings using the AT command

- Displays the current settings.

<How to enter>

AT+CGDCONT?

## Setting up Dial-up

- This section takes accessing mopera by packet communication for example.
- Enter "\*99\*\*\*3#" as the number of access point for mopera U or "\*99\*\*\*1#" for mopera.

### Specifying Caller ID Notification

You can set whether or not to notify the other person of your caller ID (whether or not to notify the access point of your telephone number) when you perform packet communication. Since the caller ID is important information, take care when you notify of your telephone number.

You can set up the Notify(186)/Not notify(184) Caller ID settings using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection (example: 184\*99\*\*\*1#).

If you do not make the setting, your caller ID will be notified to the other party.

### NOTE

- The Caller ID needs to be set to "Notify" to use the DoCoMo Internet connection service mopera U or mopera.

## Setting up dial-up on Windows 98, Windows Me

1 Select "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dial-up network)

2 When the "ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ" (Welcome to Dial-up Network) screen appears, click "次へ" (Next)

This screen appears only the first time the dial-up network is started. Click "次へ" (Next) to proceed to Step 4.

This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the "Dial-up Network" screen in Step 3 does instead.



3 Double-click "新しい接続" (New connection) in the Dial-up Network



4 Enter any name in the "接続名" (Connection Name) and click "次へ" (Next)

Confirm that "FOMA N600i" is selected in the "モデムの選択" (Modem selection) column. If "FOMA N600i" is not selected, select "FOMA N600i".



5 Enter the access point number in the "電話番号" (Phone Number) column, and click "次へ" (Next)

Leave the "市外局番" (Area Code) column blank.



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

6 Confirm the Connection name (any name) and click "完了" (Finish)



7 Select the created Dial-up icon, and then select "プロパティ" (Properties) from the "ファイル" (File) menu



## 8 Confirm "電話番号" (Phone number) and "接続方法" (Connection method) on the "全般" (General) tab

Uncheck "市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う" (Use the Properties of the Area Code and Dial)

Confirm that the "FOMA N600i" is selected in the "接続方法" (Connection method) column. If "FOMA N600i" is not currently selected, select it.



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

## 9 Click the "ネットワーク" (Network) tab and make the settings

Select "PPP: インターネット、Windows 2000/NT、Windows Me" in the "ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類" (Dial-up server type)

Check only "TCP/IP" in "使用できるネットワークプロトコル" (Network protocols available) field.

### For Windows 98

Click the "サーバーの種類" (Server type) tab and make the settings

Select "PPP: インターネット、Windows NT Server、Windows 98" in the "ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類" (Dial-up server type).

Check only "TCP/IP" in "使用できるネットワークプロトコル" (Network protocols available) field.



## 10 Click the "セキュリティ" (Security) tab to check the settings and click "OK"

You can connect either to mopera U or mopera with user name and password columns blank. To use a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in the "ユーザー名" (User Name) and "パスワード" (Password) columns.

### For Windows 98

Click "OK"



## Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

### 1 Select "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続" (Network and dial-up connection)

### 2 Double-click "新しい接続の作成" (New connection) in "ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続" (Network and Dial-up Connections)



### 3 If the "所在地情報" (Address information) screen appears, enter "市外局番" (Area Code) and click "OK"

The "所在地情報" (Address Information) screen appears only the first time the "新しい接続の作成" (New connection) is started in Step 2.

This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the "ネットワークの接続ウィザード" (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead. Proceed to Step 5.

4 When the "電話とモデムのオプション" (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click "OK"

5 When the "ネットワークの接続ウィザード" (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click "次へ" (Next)

6 Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する" (Dial-up to the Internet), and click "次へ" (Next)

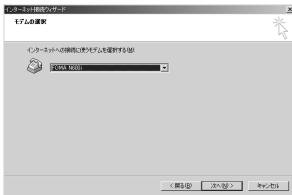
7 Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します"(Set up the Internet Connection manually or connect via local area network (LAN)), and click "次へ" (Next)

8 Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します" (Connect to the Internet using a telephone line and a modem), and click "次へ" (Next)

9 Confirm that "FOMA N600i" is selected in the "インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する" (Select the modem used to connect to the Internet), and then click "次へ" (Next)

If "FOMA N600i" is not currently selected, select "FOMA N600i".

This screen does not appear if a modem other than "FOMA N600i" is not installed.



10 Enter the access point number in the "電話番号" (Phone Number) column, and click "詳細設定" (Advanced settings)

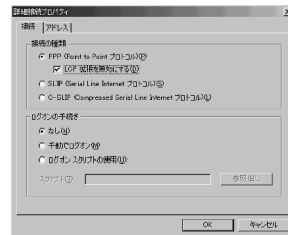
Uncheck "市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う" (Use Area Code and Dial information).



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

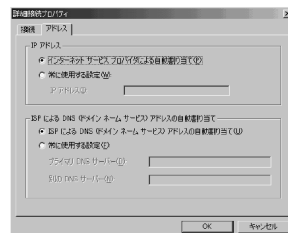
11 Make the settings on the "接続" (Connection) tab as follows, and click the "アドレス" (Address) tab

To use a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in "接続の種類" (Connection type) and "ログオンの手続き" (Logon procedure).



12 Make the settings for the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the "アドレス" (Address) tab as follows and click "OK"

To use a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in "IPアドレス" (IP address) and in "ISPによるDNS (ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て" (DNS (Domain Name Service) automatically allocated by ISP).



13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click "次へ" (Next)

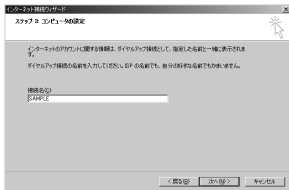
14 Click "次へ" (Next)

You can connect either to moper a U or moper a with user name and password columns blank.

To use a provider other than moper a U or moper a, enter the user name and password specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in the "ユーザー名" (User Name) and "パスワード" (Password) columns.



15 Enter any name in the "接続名" (Connection Name) and click "次へ" (Next)



16 Select "いいえ" (No) and click "次へ" (Next)

17 Click "完了" (Finish)

18 Select the created Dial-up icon, and then click "プロパティ" (Properties) from the "ファイル" (File) menu



19 Confirm the settings on the "全般" (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only "モデム - FOMA N600i" (Modem-FOMA N600i) (Modem-FOMA N600i) is checked in the "接続の方法" (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that "ダイヤル情報を使う" (Use dial information) is unchecked. If checked, uncheck it.

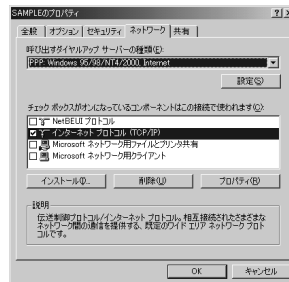


The screen above shows an example of accessing moper a by packet communication.

20 Click the "ネットワーク" (Network) tab and make the settings

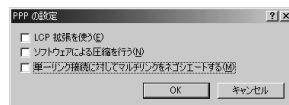
Select "PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet" in the "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類" (Dial-up server type)

Check only "インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)" (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



21 Click "設定" (Settings)

22 Clear all the boxes and click "OK"

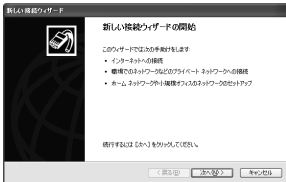


23 When the screen returns to Step 20, click "OK"

## Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

1 Select "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "新しい接続ウィザード" (New connection wizard)

2 When the "新しい接続ウィザード" (New connection wizard) screen appears, click "次へ" (Next)



3 Select "インターネットに接続する" (Connect to the Internet), and click "次へ" (Next)

4 Select "接続を手動でセットアップする" (Set up the connection manually), and click "次へ" (Next)

5 Select "ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する" (Connect via dial-up modem), and click "次へ" (Next)

6 If the "デバイスの選択" (Select device) screen appears, select only "モデム - FOMA N600i (COMx)" (Modem - FOMA N600i (COMx)), and click "次へ" (Next)

The "デバイスの選択" (Select device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems. (COMx) is the COM port number displayed in "Checking the COM port" (p.18).



7 Enter any name in the "ISP名" (ISP Name) and click "次へ" (Next)



8 Enter the access point number in the "電話番号" (Phone Number) column, and click "次へ" (Next)



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

9 Click "次へ" (Next)

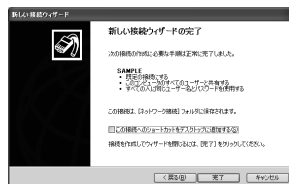
You can connect either to mopera U or mopera with user name and password columns blank.

To use a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the "ユーザー名" (User Name), "パスワード" (Password) and "パスワードの確認入力" (Confirm password) columns.



10 Click "完了" (Finish)

The newly created connection wizard appears.



11 Select "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワーク接続" (Network connection)

12 Select the created Dial-up icon, and then select "プロパティ" (Properties) from the "ファイル" (File) menu



13 Confirm the settings on the "全般" (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only "モデム - FOMA N600i" (Modem - FOMA N600i) is checked in the "接続の方法" (Connection method) column. If not, check it. Confirm that "ダイヤル情報を使う" (Use dial information) is unchecked. If checked, uncheck it.



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

14 Click the "ネットワーク" (Network) tab and make the settings

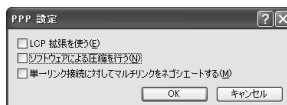
Select "PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet" in the "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類" (Dial-up server type)

Select "インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)" (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) under "この接続は次の項目を使用します" (Use the following items for this connection). Leave the setting of "QoS/パケットスケジューラ" (QoS Packet Scheduler) unchanged (it cannot be changed).



15 Click "設定" (Settings)

16 Clear all the boxes and click "OK"

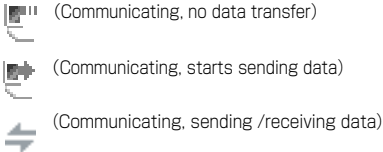


17 When the screen returns to Step 14, click "OK"

## Dialing up to connect

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication by using the dial-up setting.

- During packet communication, an icon on the FOMA terminal screen depending the communication status.



<Example: For Windows Me>

### 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

"Connecting the devices"→p.3

### 2 Select "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dial-up network)

### 3 Select the icon of the access point to connect, and then select "接続" (Connect)



### 4 Confirm each item and click "接続" (Connect)

The phone number of the access point specified for dial-up network is displayed in "電話番号" (Phone number).

You can connect either to mopera U or mopera with user name and password columns blank.

To use a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the "ユーザー名" (User Name) and "パスワード" (Password) columns.



<The Connecting screen appears>

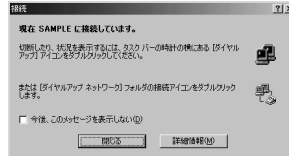
The user name and password are confirmed to be ready to log on.



<Connection completed>

You can use e-mail or run the browser software to browse Websites.

If this screen does not appear, check the settings of the access point again.



<Example: For Windows XP>

### 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

"Connecting the devices"→p.3

### 2 Select "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ネットワーク接続" (Network connection)

### 3 Open the access point

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name specified in Step 7 on p.26 to select "ネットワークタスク" (Network task) → "この接続を開始する" (Start this connection), or double-click the icon of the access point.



## 4 Confirm the settings and click "ダイヤル" (Dial)

The following screen shows an example for mopera connection. You can connect either to mopera U or mopera with user name and password columns blank.



### < The Connecting screen appears >

The user name and password are confirmed to be ready to log on.



### < Connection completed >

When the connection is completed, the following message appears from the indicator of the taskbar located at the right-bottom of the desktop for a few seconds.

You can use e-mail or run the browser software to browse Websites.

If this screen does not appear, check the settings of the access point again. See p.28 for communication status.



## When this happens

- Check the following if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully:

Problem	Points to check
"FOMA N600i" is not recognized by the PC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if your PC is equipped with the environment required (p.2).</li> <li>• Check if the N600i communication setting file has been correctly installed.</li> <li>• Check if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on.</li> <li>• Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected.</li> </ul>
Unable to connect to the access point	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct</li> <li>• Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected.</li> <li>• If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not prefixed to the phone number.</li> <li>• Check if the "フロー制御を使う" (Use the flow control) box of the modem properties is selected.</li> <li>• Check if the APN is set correctly.</li> <li>• If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, check with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.</li> </ul>

## How to disconnect

Just closing the Internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section takes Windows XP for example.

### 1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the Task tray

The status screen for the Internet connection will appear.



Dial-up icon

### 2 Click "切断" (Disconnect)

#### NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

# AT Command List

## AT commands available on FOMA terminal

- The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list:  
[&F]:The settings are initialized by AT&F command.

## Modem port command list

The following commands can be used for "FOMA N600i" (モデム) (modem):

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Execution examples
AT	—	Adding a command in this table after this command controls the modem function of the FOMA terminal. ※OK is returned even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT&C <i>n</i> [&F]	Selects the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	<i>n</i> =0: CD is always ON <i>n</i> =1: CD changes by the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value)	AT&C1 OK
AT&D <i>n</i> [&F]	Selects the operation to be performed when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	<i>n</i> =0: Ignores ER status (always assumed to be ON) <i>n</i> =1: When ER changes from ON to OFF, it will be in an on-line command status <i>n</i> =2: When ER changes from ON to OFF, the line is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value)	AT&D1 OK
AT&F <i>n</i>	Restores all registers to the factory settings. If this command is entered during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only <i>n</i> =0 can be specified (can be omitted)	(In off-line mode) AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F=? ERROR (In on-line command mode) AT&F NO CARRIER (Changes to off-line mode)
AT+CBST [&F]	Sets the bearer service settings when the line is connected.	Format : AT+CBST=<speed>,<name>,<ce> <speed> 116 : 64000 bps (initial value) 131 : 32000 bps 134 : 64000 bps <name> 1 : data circuit synchronous (UDI or 3.1 kHz modem) (initial value) <ce> 0 : transparent (initial value)  This command is valid only when +FCLASS=0	AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK AT+CBST? +CBST:116,1,0
AT+CBC	Displays the battery status.	Result : +CBC<bcs>,<bcl> <bcs> 0 : FOMA terminal is powered by the battery 1 : FOMA terminal is not powered by the battery 2 : FOMA terminal is not connected to the battery 3 : FOMA terminal is out of transmission due to the power-supply error <bcl> 0 to 100 : Battery remained	AT+CBC +CBC:0,80 OK AT+CBC? ERROR AT+CBC=? +CBC:(0-3), (0-100) OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.	p,36	p,36

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Execution examples
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to accept the QoS (quality of service) sent from the network when PPP packet communication is established.	AT+CGEQMIN=[Parameter](p.36) AT+CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of values that can be set AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting	p.36
AT+CGEQREQ	Sets the QoS (quality of service) to request network to send when originating PPP packet communication.	AT+CGEQREQ=[Parameter](p.36) AT+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of values that can be set AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting	p.36
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGMR 12345XXXXXXXXXXXX OK
AT+CGREG= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Specifies whether to notify the network registration status. Displays in service area /out of service area judging by the returned notice.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not notify (initial value) <i>n</i> =1 : Notify Notifies when switching between in service area and out of service area AT+CGREG? : Displays the current setting +CGREG :< <i>n<i>n</i> : Setting stat : 0 : Out of packet area 1 : In packet area 4 : Unknown 5 : In packet area</i>	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to Notify) AT+CGREG? +CGREG:1.0 OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Out of service area)  (Moved from out to in) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Displays the product number of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345XXXXXXXXXXXX OK
AT+CMEE= <i>n</i>  [&F]	Sets whether or not you receive the error report from the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =0 : Uses ERROR result (initial value) <i>n</i> =1 : +CME ERROR: Uses <err> result code, which is a numeric value <i>n</i> =2 : +CME ERROR: Uses <err> result code, which is a character AT+CMEE? : Displays the current setting Shown on the right are the execution examples if an error occurs on the FOMA terminal or on the connection.  The following are the +CME ERROR result codes: 1: no connection to phone 10: SIM not inserted 15: SIM wrong 16: incorrect password 100: unknown	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:1.0 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM	Displays the own number of the FOMA terminal.	number : Phone number type : 129 or 145 129 : International access code (+) is not included 145 : International access code (+) is included	AT+CNUM +CNUM: "+8190XXXX XXXX",145 OK
AT+CPAS	Displays whether the control signal to the FOMA terminal is available or not.	Result: +CPAS:<pas> <pas> 0 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal 1 : FOMA terminal can not send/receive control signal 2 : Unknown (control signal sending/receiving is not assured) 3 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently receiving. 4 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently communicating.	AT+CPAS +CPAS:0  OK AT+CPAS? ERROR AT+CPAS=? +CPAS:(0-4)  OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Execution examples
AT+CPIN	Enters the PIN code on the FOMA terminal.	<p>Format: AT+CPIN="<pin&gt;","&lt;newpin&gt;"< p=""> <p>This is a command to enter the PIN1, PIN2 or PUK code for the FOMA terminal, depending on the status of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered.</p> <p>Even if you are requested to enter the PIN code or PUK code on the screen, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN, depending on the status of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered. Do not use this command in order to change the PIN code. Enclose &lt;pin&gt; and &lt;newpin&gt; in "" (double quotation mark)</p> <p>AT+CPIN? result  +CPIN: READY: PIN1 code, PIN2 code</p> <p>Cannot enter the PUK1 or PUK2 code  +CPIN : SIM PIN: PIN1 entry standby  +CPIN : SIM PIN2: PIN2 entry standby  +CPIN : SIM PUK: PIN1 locked (Can enter PUK1 code)  +CPIN : SIM PUK2: PIN2 locked (Can enter PUK2 code)</p> <p>The command shown on the right is the entry example of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".</p> </pin&gt;","&lt;newpin&gt;"<></p>	<p>(+CPIN: READY is returned when +CPIN? is entered)  AT+CPIN="1234"  ERROR</p> <p>(+CPIN: READY is returned when +CPIN? is entered)  AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234"  ERROR</p> <p>(+CPIN: SIM PIN is returned when +CPIN? is entered)  AT+CPIN="1234"  OK</p> <p>(+CPIN: SIM PUK is returned when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 locked)  AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234"  OK</p> <p>(+CPIN: SIM PUK2 is returned when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 locked)  AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234"  OK</p> <p>AT+CPIN?  +CPIN:READY</p> <p>OK</p> <p>AT+CPIN=?  OK</p>
AT+CR= <i>n</i>	Displays the bearer service type before displaying the CONNECT result code when the line is connected.	<p><i>n</i> = 0 : Not display (initial value)  <i>n</i> = 1 : Display  &lt;serv&gt; : Displays only "GPRS", which means packet communication (Displays "SYNC" depending on the line type)</p> <p>AT+CR?  :Displays the current setting</p>	<p>AT+CR = 1  OK  ATD *99***1#  +CR: GPRS  CONNECT</p>
[&F]			
AT+CRC= <i>n</i>	Sets whether to use the extended result code when receiving a call.	<p><i>n</i> = 0 : Not use +CRING (initial value)  <i>n</i> = 1 : Use +CRING.&lt;type&gt;  AT+CRC?  : Displays the current setting.</p>	<p>AT+CRC=0  OK  AT+CRC?  +CRC: 0  OK</p>
[&F]			
AT+CREG= <i>n</i>	<p>Specifies whether to display the result regarding the information on in service area/out of service area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting may not be available depending on the Operating System.</li> </ul>	<p><i>n</i> = 0 : Not notify (initial value)  <i>n</i> = 1 : Notify  Notifies when switching between in service area and out of service area</p> <p>AT+CREG?  : Displays the current setting  +CREG : &lt;<i>n</i>&gt;. &lt;stat&gt;  <i>n</i> : Setting  stat :  0 : Out of voice call area  1 : In voice call area  4 : Unknown  5 : In voice call area</p>	<p>AT+CREG=1  OK  (Set to Notify)</p> <p>AT+CREG?  +CREG: 1, 0  OK  (Out of service area)  (Moved from out to in)  +CREG: 1</p>
[&F]			
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name (NEC)	-	<p>AT+GMI  NEC  OK</p>

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Execution examples
AT+CUSD  [&F]	Sends USSD signal to check the change and details of the network settings.	Format : AT+CUSD=<n>,"<str>",<dcs>  <n> 0 : Not send mid result <m > [<str>,<dcs>] (initial value) 1 : Sends mid result <m > [<str>,<dcs>] Mid result <m>0 : The settings completed. 1 : The network requires the info. <str> Only 0-9, # and * are permitted as USSD. Enclose <str> with " "(double quotation mark). <dcs> Only 0 can be entered (can be omitted).	AT+CUSD=0, 'xxxxxxxx' OK  AT+CUSD=1,"*148*1*0000#"0 +CUSD:0,*148*7#"0  OK  AT+CUSD? +CUSD:0  OK  AT+CUSD=? +CUSD:(0,1)  OK
AT+FCLASS= <i>n</i>	Sets the mode.	<i>n</i> =0: Data (initial value)	AT+FCLASS=0 OK AT +FCLASS? 0
AT+GMM	Displays the FOMA terminal product name (FOMA N600i).	—	AT+GMM FOMAN600i OK
AT+GCAP	Displays the list of added commands.	—	AT+GCAP +GCAP:+CGSM, +FCLASS,+W  OK  AT+GCAP? ERROR AT+GCAP=? OK
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC= <i>n,m</i>  [&F]	Selects the flow control method.	<i>n</i> : DCE by DTE <i>m</i> : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : XON/XOFF flow control 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control Default : <i>n, m</i> =2, 2 AT+IFC?: Displays the current setting	AT+IFC=2,2 OK  AT+IFC? +IFC : 2,2  OK  AT+IFC=? +IFC : (0,1,2) ,(0,1,2)  OK
ATA	Handles the incoming call following the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Automatically dials to the FOMA terminal following the parameter or dial parameter.	ATD *99 * * * <cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 16 : Represents APN with +CGDCONT setting	<Packet communication> ATD *99 * * * 1# CONNECT
ATE <i>n</i>  [&F]	Sets whether to echo back to DTE in the command mode.	<i>n</i> =0 : Not echo back <i>n</i> =1 : Echo back (initial value)	ATE 1 OK
ATH <i>n</i>	Performs the on-hook operation to the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> =0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted)	(During packet communication) +++ OK ATH NO CARRIER

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Execution examples
ATIn	Displays the ID code.	n=0 : Displays "NTT DoCoMo" n=1 : Displays the product name (same as +GMM) n=2 : Displays the version of the FOMA terminal (same as +GMR) n=3 : Displays each element of the ACMP signal. n=4 : Displays the details of the communication function equipped with the FOMA terminal.	AATIO NTT DoCoMo OK AT11 FOMA N600i OK
ATOn	Restores the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	n=0 : Restores online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted)	ATO CONNECT
ATQn [&F]	Specifies whether or not to display the result code to DTE.	n=0 : Display the result code (initial value) n=1 : Not display the result code	ATQO OK ATQ1 (OK is not returned)
ATSO=n [&F]	Specifies the ring count before the FOMA terminal automatically receives a call.	n=0 : Not automatically receive (initial value) n=1-255 : Automatically receive with the specified ring count ATSO? : Displays the current setting	ATSO=0 OK ATSO? 000 OK
ATS3=n [&F]	Sets a carriage return (CR) character.	n=13 : Initial value (Only n=13 can be specified) ATS3? : Displays the current setting	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4=n [&F]	Sets a line feed (LF) character.	n=10 : Initial value (Only n=10 can be specified) ATS4? : Displays the current setting	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5=n [&F]	Sets a backspace (BS) character.	n=8 : Initial value (Only n=8 can be specified) ATS5? : Displays the current setting	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS6=n [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) until the dial starts.	n=2 to 10 (Initial value: 5) (Second) ATS6? : Displays the current setting ※ This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
ATS7=n [&F]	Disconnects the line if the connection cannot be established within the specified period after making a call.	n=1 to 120 (Initial value: 60) (Second) 121 to 255 will be regarded as 120 ATS7? : Displays the current setting	ATS7=60 OK ATS7? 060 OK
ATS8=n [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) for the comma dial.	n=0: Does not pause n=1 to 255 (Initial value: 3) (Second) ATS8? : Displays the current setting ※ This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR
ATS10=n [&F]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting (1/10 second)	n=1 to 255 (Initial value: 1) (1/10 second) ATS10? : Displays the current setting ※ This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Execution examples
ATVn [&F]	Sets all the result codes to be displayed in numeric characters or in alphabets.	$n=0$ : Returns the result code in numeric value $n=1$ : Returns the result code in alphabets (initial value)	ATV1 OK
ATXn [&F]	Specifies whether to display the speed indication in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Detects a busy tone or a dial tone.	$n=0$ : No dial tone detected, no busy tone detected, speed not displayed $n=1$ : No dial tone detected, no busy tone detected, speed displayed $n=2$ : Dial tone detected, no busy tone detected, speed displayed $n=3$ : No dial tone detected, busy tone detected, speed displayed $n=4$ : Dial tone detected, busy tone detected, speed displayed (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Resets the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is entered during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(In on-line command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (In off-line command mode) ATZ OK

## ● Supplementary explanation of AT command

### ■ Non-operating commands

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)

### ■ Command name: +CGDCONT

#### • Outline

Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.

This is a set command, but is not reset by [&F] or [Z].

#### • Format

+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"] ]]

#### • Parameter

Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination. See the following command execution example:

<cid>\* : 1 to 16

<APN>\* : Any value

\* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) to register on the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. A number from 1 to 16 is available on the FOMA terminal.

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" to <cid>=3 as an initial value. Specify cid 2 or 4 to 16 as the APN.

<APN> is a string indicating each access point name.

#### • Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGDCONT= : Sets initial values to all <cid>.

+CGDCONT=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGDCONT=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGDCONT? : Displays the current setting.

#### • Execution example

When registering an APN named abc (cid is 2)

AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc"

OK

### ■ Command name:

+CGEQMIN=[Parameter]

#### • Outline

Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to accept the QoS (quality of service) sent from the network when PPP packet communication is established.

Can set one of the four setting patterns described in the following execution example. This is a set command, but is not reset by [&F] or [Z].

#### • Format

+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[.,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>] ]]

#### • Parameter

<cid>\* : 1 to 16

<Maximum bitrate UL>\* : None (initial value)

<Maximum bitrate DL>\* : None (initial value)

\* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) to register on the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. A number from 1 to 16 is available on the FOMA terminal.

"mopera.ne.jp" and "mopera.net" are registered as default to cid1 and cid3, respectively. If you would like to set other APNs, specify cid2 or cid4 to cid16 for them.

<Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speeds (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to "None" (initial value), all speeds are available. When set to 64 or 384, a connection cannot be established at other than 64 or 384, which means that a packet communication may not be established.

#### • Operation performed when the parameter is omitted

+CGEQMIN= : Sets initial values to all <cid>.

+CGEQMIN=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

#### • Execution example

Only the following four patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

(1) Allowing all speeds for uplink and downlink (cid is 2)

AT+CGEQMIN=2

OK

(2) Allowing the speeds of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (cid is 4)

AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384

OK

(3) Allowing uplink 64kbps and all downlink speeds (cid is 5)

AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64

OK

(4) Allowing all uplink speeds and downlink 384kbps (cid is 6)

AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384

OK

### ■ Command name:

+CGEQREQ=[Parameter]

#### • Outline

Sets the QoS (quality of service) to request network to send when originating PPP packet communication.

Can set only one setting pattern described in the following execution example, which is also set as an initial value.

This is a set command, but is not reset by [&F] or [Z].

#### • Format

+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

#### • Parameter

<cid>\* : 1 to 16

\* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) to register on the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. A number from 1 to 16 is available on the FOMA terminal.

"mopera.ne.jp" and "mopera.net" are registered as default to cid1 and cid3, respectively. If you would like to set other APNs, specify cid2 or cid4 to 16 for them.

• **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQREQ=: Sets initial values to all <cid>.  
 +CGEQREQ=<cid>: Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

• **Execution example**

Only the following one pattern can be set, which is set as an initial value to each cid.  
 Requesting the connection at uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (cid is 2)  
 AT+CGEQREQ=2  
 OK

**Saving modem port command setting value**

The values set by AT commands are initialized when the FOMA terminal is turned on or off, excluding the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (p.20) and QoS (quality of service) setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ commands. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ

even after the power is turned on or off.

## Result code

■ **Result codes on data communication**

Number	Character	Description
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected.
2	RING	Receiving a call.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Cannot accept command.
6	NO DIALTONE	Cannot detect dial tone.
7	BUSY	Detecting busy tone.
8	NO ANSWER	Time up for connection.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted.

■ **Extended result codes**

• &E1

Number	Character	Description
121	CONNECT 32000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 32,000 bps.
122	CONNECT 64000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 64,000 bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 384,000 bps.

• &E1

Number	Character	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200 bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400 bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800 bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200 bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600 bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400 bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200 bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400 bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600 bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200 bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400 bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800 bps.

■ **Communication protocol result codes**

Number	Character	Description
5	PACKET	Connected via packet communication

**NOTE**

- The result code is displayed in character format (initial value) when ATVn command (p.35) is set to n=1, and in number format when the command is set to n=0.
- The communication speed is displayed to keep the compatibility for PC process with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C. The displayed speed differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- "RESTRICTION" (Number: 100) indicates that the communication network is congested. If this is displayed, wait a while and then try again.

## Result code display example

### ■ ATX0 is set

Regardless of the AT#Vn command (p.35) setting, only CONNECT is displayed when the connection is completed:

```
Character example : ATD*99***1#  
CONNECT  
Number example  : ATD*99***1#  
1
```

### ■ ATX1 is set

· ATX1 and AT#VO are set (initial value)  
Displays in the following format when the connection is completed:

```
Character example : ATD*99***1#  
CONNECT 460800  
Number example  : ATD*99***1#  
1 21
```

· ATX1 and AT#V1 are set\*

Displays in the following format when the connection is completed:

```
CONNECT <speed between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <APN> /  
<Upstream (the FOMA terminal→Wireless base station) maximum speed> /  
<Downstream (the FOMA terminal←Wireless base station) maximum speed>
```

The following example shows that a connection was established to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 64kbps for sending and maximum 384kbps for receiving:

```
Character example : ATD*99***1#  
CONNECT 460800  
PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384  
Number example  : ATD*99***1#  
1 21 5
```

\* : Setting ATX1 and AT#V1 at the same time may not allow the dial-up connection correctly. It is recommended to use ATX1 and AT#VO (initial value) setting.

## Disconnection reason list

The following are the disconnection reasons regarding the requests:

### ■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	APN missing or unknown.
30	Disconnected from the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Disconnected successfully.